ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

Škoda Partner
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐ **YES**

☐ **NO**

Limitation of Škoda extended warranty [a)]

Years: _____

or:

km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a)] Whichever comes first.

Prepaid service option

Applies to the Czech Republic

☐ Standard	☐ Up to 5 years 60,000 km
☐ Plus	☐ Up to 5 years 100,000 km
	☐ Up to 5 years 150,000 km

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not allowed without the written consent of Škoda Auto a.s..

All proprietary rights to this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by Škoda Auto a.s..

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: Škoda Auto a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© Škoda Auto a.s. 2024

Vehicle owners

1. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

2. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owners

6 Explanations

7 About the Owner's Manual

8 About the Owner's Manual

9 Simply Clever overview

11 Instructions in the Infotainment system
11 Functionality

13 Vehicle overviews
13 Front and side vehicle area
14 Rear vehicle area
15 Driver's seat
16 Centre console and passenger seat
16 Engine compartment

17 Indicator lights
17 Functionality
17 Overview

21 Correct and safe use
21 Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle
21 New vehicle or new parts
21 Regular checks
21 Incorrect vehicle adjustments
22 Sensor and camera maintenance
22 Engine compartment
22 Handling fluids
23 12V vehicle battery
23 Using vehicle electrical sockets
23 Before your journey
23 Sitting safely
24 Correct belt webbing arrangement
24 Correct steering wheel position
24 Securing children properly
25 Transporting objects safely
25 Safe driving
26 Stop the vehicle safely
26 Exiting the vehicle
26 Different climatic conditions
26 Emergency calls
28 After an accident

29 Key, locks and alarm
29 Key
30 Central locking
32 Keyless locking
33 Alarm

35 Doors, windows and the boot lid
35 Doors
35 Child safety lock on the rear doors
36 Windows – with electrical operation
37 Sunroof
38 Sun visor – with electric operation
38 Rear window shade
38 Rear door window shades
38 Sun visors
38 Boot lid – with manual operation
39 Boot lid – with electric operation
40 Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation
41 Releasing the boot lid

42 Seats, steering wheel and mirrors
42 Front seat – with manual operation
42 Front seat – with partial electrical operation
42 Front seats – with electrical operation
43 Seat memory
44 Seat massage function
44 Rear seats
45 Headrests
46 Front armrest
46 Rear armrest
46 Opening in the backrest
47 Steering wheel
48 Interior mirror
48 Exterior mirrors

50 Restraint systems and airbags
50 Seat belts
51 Child seat
53 Fasteners for child seats
57 Airbags
58 Passenger front airbag switch

60 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
60 Exterior lighting
61 Daytime running lights
61 Automatic activation of lights
62 High beam and headlight flasher
62 Turn signal
62 Lights for bad weather
63 Rear fog light
63 Hazard warning lights function
63 Parking lights function
63 The Corner function
63 Headlights adaptive function

64 The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions
64 High beam Light Assist assistant
64 Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant
65 Interior lighting
66 Interior background lighting
67 Wipers and washers

70 Heating and air conditioning
70 The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
72 Independent auxiliary heating and ventilation
74 Windows heating
75 Seat heating and ventilation
76 Steering wheel heating

77 Driver information system
77 Virtual cockpit
78 Head-up screen
78 Driving data
79 Vehicle status

80 Getting to know the Infotainment system
80 The Infotainment system overview
80 HOME menu
80 Preferred functions
81 Favourite applications
81 Main menu
81 Applications menu
81 Logout screen
81 Configuration assistant
82 System
82 Sound

83 The Infotainment system controls
83 Display controls
83 Keypad
84 Control centre
84 Voice control
86 Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls

87 Radio
87 FM radio
89 DAB radio
91 WEB radio and podcasts

93 Media
93 Audio player
93 File management

96 Mobile devices management
96 Using mobile devices

98 Phone
98 Using the phone
99 Managing contacts
99 Phone conversation
100 Conference call
100 SMS
101 Email
102 Mailbox

103 Wi-Fi
103 Wi-Fi use

105 SmartLink
105 Using the SmartLink function
106 Android Auto
107 Apple CarPlay

109 Navigation
109 Map
110 Finding a destination
111 Predictive destinations
112 Recent destinations
112 Favourite destinations
112 Route guidance
113 Demo mode

115 Online services
115 Škoda Connect
116 MyŠkoda application
116 Data connection via the data package for eSIM in the vehicle
116 Škoda Connect services user registration and activation
117 Setting personal data protection
117 User management
119 Personalisation
119 Over-the-Air update
120 Application updates
120 Shop
121 Information calls
121 Breakdown call
121 Planning a service visit
121 Vehicle health card
122 Škoda Connect services

123 Starting and driving
123 Starting
123 Starting issues
124 START-STOP
124 Automatic gearbox
126 Driving modes
126 Economical driving style
127 Driving with a trailer
127 Tow eye and towing
129 Brakes
129 Electrical parking brake
130 Auto Hold automatic securing of the car
131 48V battery

133 Driver assist systems
133 Braking and stabilising systems
134 Front Assist
135 Pedestrian detection
135 Speed limiter
136 Cruise control system
137 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
140 Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane
141 Travel Assist

142 Side Assist – lane change system
143 Traffic sign recognition
144 Proactive passenger protection – Crew Protect Assist
145 Driver Alert fatigue detection
145 Inattention detection
145 Emergency Assist – assistant for emergency situations
146 Eco Assist automatic power regeneration assistant

147 Parking assist systems
147 Park Pilot parking aid
148 Rear view camera
149 Monitoring the surroundings Top View
150 Rear Traffic Alert
150 Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle
151 Trailer manoeuvring assistant Trailer Assist
152 Smart parking assistant
154 Park assistant with memory function
155 Remotely controlled parking

157 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
157 Bonnet
157 Engine oil
159 Coolant
160 Engine electronics
160 Particulate filter
161 Exhaust gas control system
161 Fuel filter
161 Fuel filler flap
161 (AdBlue®)
162 Petrol
164 Diesel fuel

166 12V vehicle battery and fuses
166 12V vehicle battery
167 Using jump start cables
168 Fuses
169 Fuses in the dash panel
170 Fuses in the engine compartment

172 Wheels
172 Tyres and rims
173 All-season or winter tyres
173 Snow chains
173 SEAL tyres
174 Temporary spare wheel
174 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
176 Tyre repair kit
177 Tyre pressure
178 Tyre pressure monitor
178 Tyre pressure monitoring assistant
179 Wheel bolt cover caps
179 Full-width wheel cover

181 Storage space and interior equipment
181 Luggage compartment equipment
181 Emergency equipment
182 Tool kit
182 Fasteners in the boot
183 Securing nets
183 Multifunction pocket
185 Net partition
185 Boot lid
185 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
187 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
188 Luggage compartment partition
189 Interior equipment front
189 Interior equipment rear
189 Storage compartment for umbrella
190 Phone box
190 Cup holder
191 Waste container
191 Blanket
191 Tablet holder
192 Space for a tablet
192 12V power socket
192 USB inputs

193 Roof rack and the towing bracket
193 Roof rack
193 Towing bracket

197 Maintenance and cleaning
197 Service events
197 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
198 Škoda Prepaid service
198 Interior
199 Exterior

202 Technical data and specifications
202 Technical data regulations
202 Vehicle identification data
202 Stickers and labels
203 Axle weights and loads
203 Operating weight
204 Vehicle dimensions
204 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
204 Personal data
204 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
207 Collection and processing of scrap cars
207 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
208 Product recycling
209 Trademarks Information
209 Preparation for breathalyser
209 Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

211 Engine specifications
211 1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine mHEV
211 2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine
211 2.0 l/150 kW TSI engine
212 2.0 l/195 kW TSI engine
212 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

212 2.0 l/142 kW TDI CR engine

213 Simply Clever
213 12V power socket
213 Automatic function of luggage compartment roll-up cover
213 Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation
213 Rear window shade
214 Rear door window shades
214 Card holder on the arm rest
214 Parking permit holder
214 Cup holder
214 Cup holder with the Easy Open function
215 The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment
215 The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment
215 Tablet holder
215 Pencil holder
215 Net partition
215 Child safety lock on the rear doors
216 Boot lid – with electric operation
216 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
216 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
217 Luggage compartment lights
217 Rear armrest
217 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
217 Multifunction pocket
218 Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls
218 Protection against refuelling with incorrect fuel
218 Phone pocket
218 Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area
218 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
219 Waste container
219 Lashing eyes for securing load in the luggage compartment
219 Sleep package
219 Rear seat belt parking position
219 Personalisation
220 Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats
220 Phone box
220 Armrest with longitudinal adjustment and a cup and tablet holder
220 Sliding hooks for bags on multifunction pocket
220 Storage space for a card, coins and glasses
221 Space for a tablet
221 Luggage compartment partition
221 QR–code in the luggage compartment
221 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
221 Storage compartment for umbrella
222 Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space
222 SmartLink
222 Towing bracket
222 Stowing the roll-up cover
222 Securing nets
223 USB inputs
223 Removable storage box
223 Removable glasses holder
223 Washer fluid filler cap
223 Heaters
224 Storage space under the variable loading floor
224 Display cleaner
224 Škoda Connect
224 Ice scraper

225 Index

Explanations

Specialist garage

"Specialist garage" is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for Škoda vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a Škoda Authorised workshop or Škoda Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Škoda Service Partner

"Škoda Service Partner" is a garage that is contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to service Škoda vehicles and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Škoda Partner

"A Partner of Škoda" is a company that has been contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to sell new Škoda vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using Škoda Genuine Parts and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"**Pressing**" – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

"**Holding**" – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units

Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

Symbols

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » page 52.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Printed version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance, and only some technical parameters.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » page 11
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

If the digital version of the Owner's Manual is not available, please use the information or assistance call, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » page 52.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » page 11
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

Simply Clever overview

- 12V socket » page 213
- Automatic function of luggage compartment roll-up cover » page 213
- Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation » page 213
- Rear window shade » page 213
- Rear door window shades » page 214
- Card holder on the arm rest » page 214
- Parking permit holder » page 214
- Cup holder » page 214
- Cup holder with the Easy Open function » page 214
- The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment » page 215
- The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment » page 215
- Tablet holder » page 215
- Pencil holder » page 215
- Net partition » page 215
- Child safety lock on the rear doors » page 215
- Boot lid – with electric operation » page 216
- The clothes hook on the middle door pillar » page 216
- Bag hooks in the luggage compartment » page 216
- Luggage compartment lights » page 217
- Rear armrest » page 217
- Luggage compartment variable loading floor » page 217
- Multifunction pocket » page 217
- Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls » page 218
- Protection against refuelling with incorrect fuel » page 218
- Phone pocket » page 218
- Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area » page 218
- Storage compartment for the reflective vest » page 218
- Waste container » page 219
- Lashing eyes for securing load in the luggage compartment » page 219
- Package for sleeping » page 219
- Rear seat belt parking position » page 219
- Stowing the rigid luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats » page 220
- Personalisation » page 219
- Phone box » page 220
- Armrest with longitudinal adjustment and an integrated cup and tablet holder » page 220
- Sliding hooks for bags on multifunction pocket » page 220

- Storage space for a card, coins and glasses » page 220
- Space for a tablet » page 221
- Luggage compartment partition » page 221
- QR–code in the luggage compartment » page 221
- Roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 221
- Storage compartment for umbrella » page 221
- Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space » page 222
- SmartLink » page 222
- Towing bracket » page 222
- Stowing the roll-up cover » page 222
- Securing nets » page 222
- USB inputs » page 223
- Removable storage box » page 223
- Removable glasses holder » page 223
- Washer fluid filler cap » page 223
- Heaters » page 223
- Storage space under the variable loading floor » page 224
- Screen cleaner » page 224
- Škoda Connect » page 224
- Ice scraper » page 224

Instructions in the Infotainment system

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in this way:

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Tap MENU > > on the Infotainment system screen.

If or is not displayed, check for available system updates » *page 82*.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

› How to search
› Interactive images
› Symbols
› Topics
› Tutorial videos
› Simply Clever
› About the manual

Search

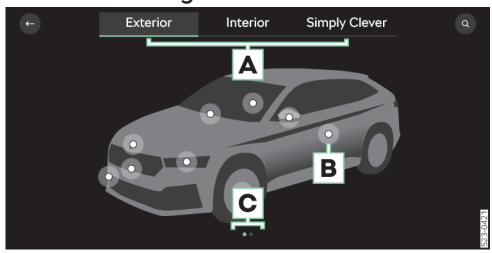
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

› Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

› To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
› When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
› If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

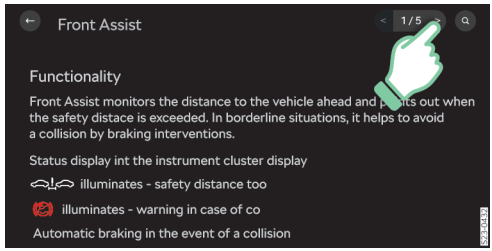
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

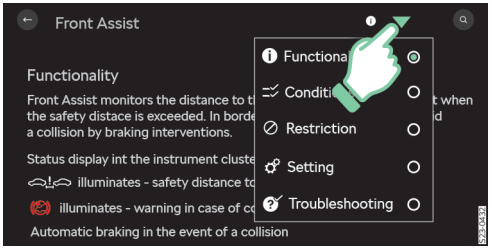


› To display more information, press > or <.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car

› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

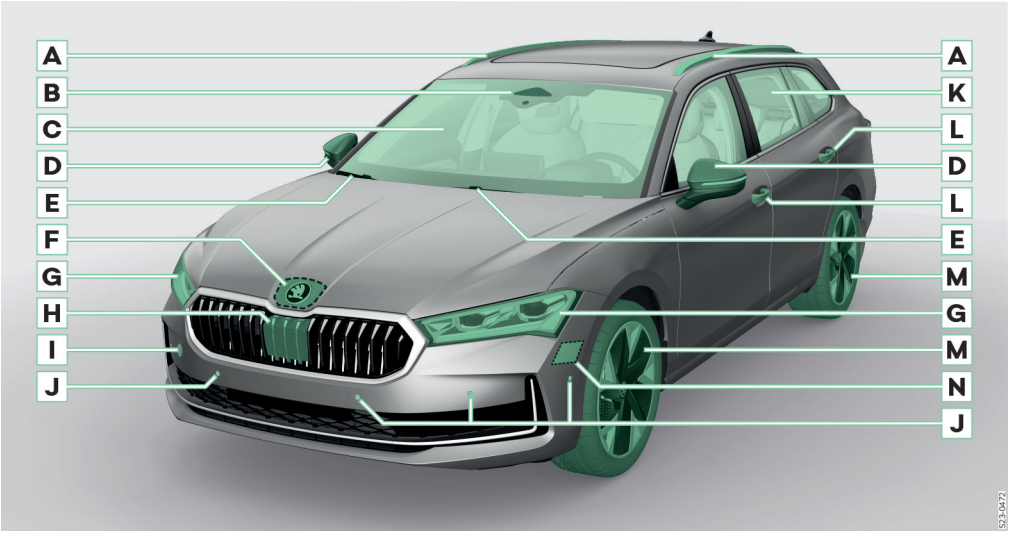
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and side vehicle area



A Roof rack » *page 193*

B Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
- Assist systems camera
- Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » *page 61*
- Rain sensor for automatic wiping » *page 67*

C Windscreen – heating » *page 74*

D Wing mirrors (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation » *page 48*
- Assist systems camera

E Wipers – operation » *page 67*

F Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » *page 157*

G Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation » *page 60*
- Lights for bad weather » *page 62*
- High beam Light Assist assistant » *page 64*
- Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant » *page 64*

H Cover on the radiator grille (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Frontal radar sensor for the assist systems
- Assist systems camera

I Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » *page 128*

J Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

K Side door windows – control » page 36

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Opening the door » page 35
- › Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 32

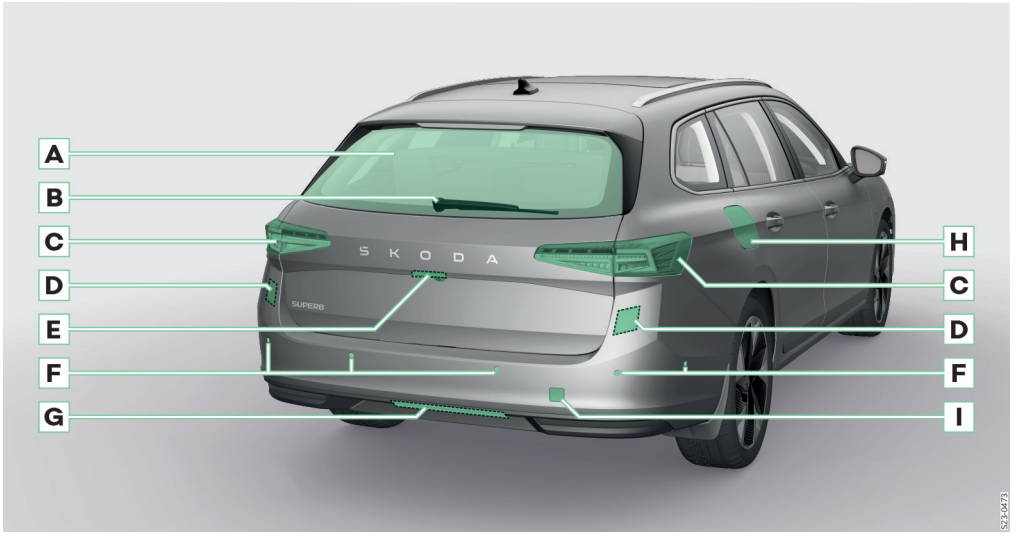
M Wheels:
- › Tyres and rims » page 172
- › Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 174
- › Tyre repair kit » page 177
- › Tyre pressure » page 177
- › Tyre pressure monitor » page 178
- › Tyre pressure monitoring assistant » page 178

N Radar sensor for assist systems (inside bumper)

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 22.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window – heating » page 74

B Rear window wiper and washer – operation » page 67

C Tail lights:
- › Operation » page 60
- › Rear fog light – operation » page 63

  Depending on vehicle equipment, the car can be fitted with two fog lights or one fog light on the driver's side.

D Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)

E Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):

- › Boot lid with manual operation » *page 39*
- › Boot lid with electrical operation » *page 40*
- › Assist systems camera » *page 148*

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

G Depending on vehicle equipment:
- › Towing bracket » *page 193*
- › Contactless operation of the boot power lid – activation » *page 41*

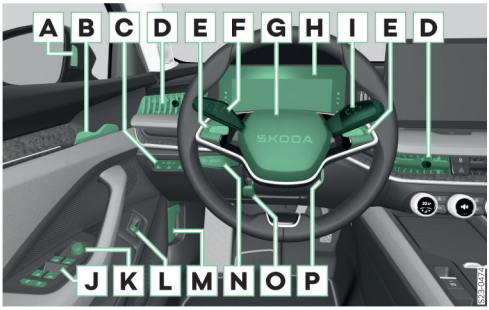
H Fuel filler cap:
- › Opening » *page 161*
- › Sticker with specified fuel
- › Ice scraper
- › AdBlue® tank filler neck » *page 161*

I Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » *page 128*

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » *page 22*.

Driver's seat



A Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist » *page 142*

B Door handle » *page 35*

C Light switch:
- › Exterior lighting » *page 60*
- › Lights for bad weather » *page 62*
- › Rear fog light » *page 63*

D Air outlet nozzle
- › To adjust the direction of the air flow, move the controller in the desired direction.
- › Adjust the airflow intensity by turning the rotary control.
  - › Reducing the intensity – turn to the right
  - › Increasing intensity – turn to the left

E Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » *page 47*

F Operating lever:
- › Turn signal » *page 62*
- › High beam and headlight flasher » *page 62*
- › High beam assistant » *page 64*
- › Headlight Assistant » *page 65*
- › Wipers and washers » *page 67*

G Steering wheel with horn and driver's front airbag » *page 57*

H Virtual cockpit » *page 77*

I Selector lever (automatic gearbox) » *page 124*

J Window operation » *page 36*

K Wing mirror operation » *page 48*

L Button for electrically operated boot lid » *page 40*

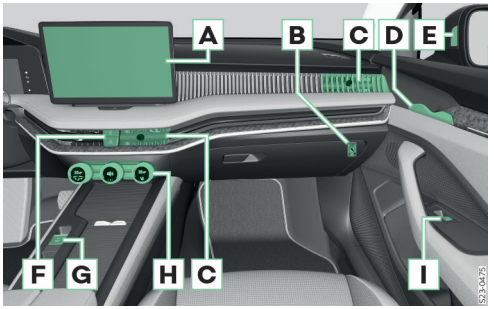
M Bonnet release lock » *page 157*

N Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Cruise control system » *page 137*
- › Speed limiter » *page 136*
- › Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) » *page 139*

O Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » *page 47*

P Starter button » *page 123*

Centre console and passenger seat



A The Infotainment system » page 80

B Passenger front airbag switch (on the side of the dashboard) » page 58

C Air outlet nozzle
- To adjust the direction of the air flow, move the controller in the desired direction.
- Adjust the airflow intensity by turning the rotary control.
  - Reducing the intensity – turn to the right
  - Increasing intensity – turn to the left

D Door handle » page 35

E Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist » page 142

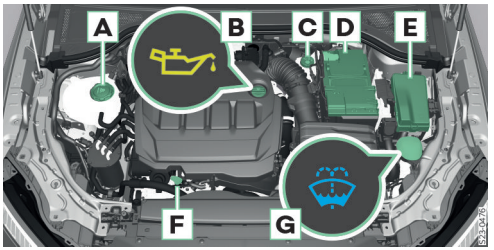
F Buttons:
- Central locking » page 31
- Hazard warning lights function » page 63

G The (P) button – parking brake » page 129

H Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls » page 86

I Passenger window operation » page 36

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 159

B Engine oil filler opening » page 158

C Brake fluid reservoir » page 129

D 12V vehicle battery » page 166

E Fuse box » page 170

F Engine oil dipstick » page 158

G Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 68

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding indicator lights and the respective messages on instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system can lead to accidents, serious injuries, damage to the vehicle or a loss of warranty.

Indicator lights indicate the current status of the respective functions or faults.

Illumination of some warning lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages on the instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system.

Warning lights

The warning light can also light up on the display, either alone or together with another indicator light:

⚠ – serious hazard

⚠ – warning

Overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are functioning correctly, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details, see *» page 17, Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a serious hazard *» page 17*.
	Unfastened front and rear seat belt *» page 50*.
	Proactive passenger protection intervenes *» page 144*.
	48V vehicle network fault *» page 131*.
	12V vehicle battery is not charging *» page 167*.
	Together with ⚠ – engine fault *» page 160*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Engine oil pressure too low *» page 159*.
	Engine oil level too low *» page 159*.
	Coolant temperature too high *» page 160*.
	Coolant level too low *» page 160*.
	Low brake fluid level *» page 129*.
	Electromechanical brake booster fault *» page 134*.
	Together with ABS – fault in brake system and ABS *» page 129*, *» page 134*.
	Flashing – parking on a slope with a very high gradient *» page 130*.
	Illuminated – parking brake engaged *» page 130*.
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault *» page 47*.
	Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) *» page 47*.
	Automatic gearbox impaired *» page 126*.
	Automatic gearbox overheated *» page 125*.
	Take over steering immediately *» page 141*.
	Emergency Assist intervenes *» page 146*.
	Low level AdBlue® *» page 162*.
	System fault AdBlue® *» page 162*.
	Warning if there is a risk of collision *» page 134*, *» page 135*.
	ACC is not braking sufficiently *» page 138*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a warning » page 17.
	The fuel level is in the reserve area » page 163.
	The diesel fuel level has reached the reserve area. » page 164.
	Fault / Low battery charge of the 12V vehicle battery » page 167.
	48V vehicle network fault » page 131.
	Electric drive system fault » page 132.
	Windscreen washer fluid too low » page 68.
	Light sensor and rain sensor fault » page 62, » page 68.
	Wipers fault » page 68.
	Defective LED light source » page 61.
	Rear fog light on » page 63.
	Engine oil level sensor malfunction » page 159.
	Engine oil level too high » page 159.
	Clogged particulate filter » page 160.
	ABS malfunction » page 134.
	Together with – fault in brake system and ABS » page 129.
	Parking brake fault » page 130.
	Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 134.
	Worn brake pads » page 129.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 125.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 126.
	Water in diesel engine fuel filter » page 161.
	System fault AdBlue® » page 162.

Symbol	Meaning
	Low level AdBlue® » page 162.
	Tyre pressure display fault » page 178, » page 179.
	Tyre pressure change » page 173, » page 178, » page 178.
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 47.
	flashes – steering column lock not active » page 48.
	Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 48.
	KESSY – no key found » page 33.
	KESSY – problem with switching on the ignition » page 123.
	Adaptive chassis fault » page 126.
	Malfunction of the all-wheel drive » page 134.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 160.
	Emission control system fault » page 161.
	Illuminates, or if it does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on – a fault in the diesel engine ignition device » page 160.
	Flashing – fault in the diesel engine control system » page 160.
ON	Passenger front airbag switched on » page 58.
OFF	Passenger front airbag switched off » page 58.
	Illuminated together with OFF – airbag switch fault » page 59.
	Airbag system fault » page 58.
	Proactive passenger protection fault » page 145.
	Illuminates for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device » page 58.
	Unsecured tow bar » page 195.

Symbol	Meaning
	The ESC Sport is activated. » page 133, » page 134.
	Deactivated ASR » page 134.
	Illuminates – ESC or ASR malfunction » page 134.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR is engaged » page 133, » page 133.
	Deactivated Front Assist » page 135.
	Front Assist inaccessible » page 135.
	Unavailable ACC » page 140.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 143.
	Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 150.
	Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant » page 151.
	Emergency Assist malfunction » page 146.
	Malfunction of Fatigue detection » page 145.
	Park Pilot malfunction » page 147.
	Malfunction of driver inattention assistant » page 145.
	Travel Assist malfunction » page 142.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 140.
	Lane Assist is deactivated » page 140.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 141.
	Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display » page 144.
	The left turn signal » page 62.
	The left turn signal » page 62.
	The right turn signal » page 62.
	The right turn signal » page 62.

Symbol	Meaning
	Trailer turn signal » page 62.
	Bad weather lights on » page 62.
	Automatic transmission locked » page 125.
	Auto Hold secures the vehicle » page 131.
	Lane Assist is activated and prepared to intervene » page 140.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit » page 139.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey » page 139.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout. » page 139.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction » page 139.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed » page 138.
	Cruise control regulates the vehicle's speed » page 136.
	Illuminated – the speed limiter regulates the speed of the vehicle » page 135.
	The Travel Assist is activated. » page 141.
	Travel Assist activated – cruise control is regulating the speed » page 141.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 141.
	Low outside temperature » page 77.
	High beam or headlight flasher is on » page 62.
	Light Assist activated – the high beam is on » page 64.
	Head Light Assist activated – the high beam is on » page 65.
	Lane Assist is activated, but it is not prepared to intervene » page 140.

Symbol	Meaning
AUTO HOLD	The Auto Hold is activated. » page 131.
	Take over driving » page 141.
	Light Assist activated » page 64.
	Head Light Assist activated » page 65.
	Service events » page 197.
LIM	Speed limiter fault » page 136.
	Illuminated – speed limiter activated » page 135.
	The ACC is activated. » page 138.
	Cruise control system fault » page 137.
	Cruise control active » page 136.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 134.
	Failure to keep a safe distance » page 134.
	Pause recommendation » page 145.
	Inattention detected alert » page 145.
	Normal driving mode » page 126.
	Eco driving mode » page 126.
	Comfort driving mode » page 126.
	Individual driving mode » page 126.
	Sport Driving Mode » page 126.
	Unavailable map data for Dynamic road sign display » page 143.
	Incorrect warning settings for Dynamic road sign display » page 143.

Correct and safe use

Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully to ensure that you are using the vehicle correctly. Always keep this Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the country of use, e.g. those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic, etc.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the vehicle technical parameters. Obstacles that exceed the vehicle's ground clearance » page 204 can damage the vehicle.
- Take care when carrying out operational, maintenance and self-assistance tasks to avoid damage or injury. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- When pushing the car, be careful not to damage the rear lights, rear spoiler and bodywork.
- Work on the vehicle's safety systems (seat belts and airbag system) may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This could include the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, follow the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's manual. These include car seats, roof racks, compressors, etc.
- Always observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle – running in the engine

The driving style during the first 1,500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- For the first 1,000 km load the engine to maximum 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine will consume up to 0.5 l/1,000 km. Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide optimum braking during the first 800 km – they must be worn off first. So drive with extra care.

New tyres

New tyres do not provide optimum grip for the first 500 km. So drive with extra care.

Regular checks

What you should be mindful of before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Repair any defects before driving. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Are the tyres undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread depth sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlights, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Are the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles and air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades frozen?
- Are all seat belt system components in good working order? Are the seat belts clean and the buckles free from obstruction?
- Are the spoilers undamaged?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Incorrect vehicle adjustments

Incorrect changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect the vehicle's safety-relevant and other functions.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
› Never place additional insulation material over the engine, e.g. a cover.
› Attach the front number plate directly to the bumper without using the number plate holder. The bracket would partially cover the ventilation grille and thus adversely affect engine cooling.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be limited for the following reasons:

› Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
› There is a load secured on the roof rack, e.g. a roof box
› The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.
› Sensor calibration is in progress:
  › During the first kilometres of driving with the new car
  › After repair of sensors or systems using sensors

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
› If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Attach the front number plate directly to the bumper without using the number plate holder.

Engine compartment

Before you open the bonnet

Risk of scalding! Do not open the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the engine compartment



Do not touch the engine compartment
Beware of hot parts!
Beware of rotating parts!
Risk of electric shock!
Use prescribed engine oil

When working in the engine compartment

› Keep children away from the engine compartment.
› Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may start up automatically, even when the ignition is off.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12V vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke near the engine, and keep open flames and sparks away from it.
› If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, beware of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
› Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. These are fuel, oils, acid from the 12V vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
› If your skin is stained by operating fluids, wash the affected areas with warm water and soap. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
› Engine oil leaks can cause fire. Wipe away any leaks using a cloth.
› Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12V vehicle battery

Handling the 12V vehicle battery

The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is very caustic. Incorrect handling of the 12V vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12V vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12V vehicle battery, as it may leak the battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Should electrolyte get into your eyes, rinse them immediately with water. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12V vehicle battery.
- Risk of short circuit Do not connect the poles of the 12V vehicle battery.

Using vehicle electrical sockets

Incorrect use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch the sockets that have become warm.
- Protect the sockets from liquids.
- If fluid does enter the power socket, dry it out completely before reusing.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

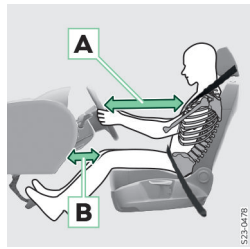
Before you set off

- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
- Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
- Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
- Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Tell your fellow passengers to do the same.
- Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
- Only 1 person can be secured with one seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
- Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.
- Do not leave any objects in the driver's footwell. They can get into the pedal area and restrict the pedal control.
- Always fix the floor mats securely in the driver's pedal area.
- Wear footwear that does not interfere with the safe operation of the pedals.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

- Adjust the seat backrests to an upright position so that the whole of your back rests on them. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- Keep your feet in the footwell.
- Use the entire seat.
- Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- Do not place any limbs out the window.

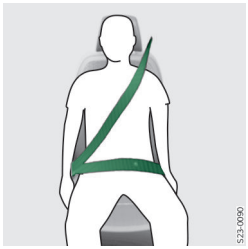


- Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least 25 cm.
- On a car with a driver's knee airbag, adjust the seat longitudinally so that the distance between your legs **B** and the dashboard at the location of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

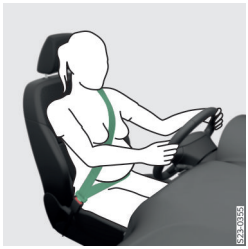
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance from the dashboard at least 25 cm.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important to ensure that the seat belts offer the best possible protection.



› The shoulder belt must run down the centre of the shoulder, not across the neck.
› The shoulder belt must fit snugly against the body (it must not lead over multi-layered loose clothing).
› The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
› The webbing must not be pinched or twisted or rub against sharp edges.
› The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects under clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
› The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing to adjust the seat belt according to body size.



› For pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that there is no pressure on the abdomen.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and do not secure the child and yourself with one seat belt.
› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 53.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children who have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. This can result in life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume an incorrect sitting position during the journey, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – if the airbag system triggers, they could be seriously injured or killed.

Child secured in an incorrect sitting position is at risk from the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

Child properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

› Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to fifty times their weight. The 1.5 l water bottle can be ejected with the motion energy equivalent to a mass of 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow items so that they do not restrict the driver's ability to operate the vehicle.
› Keep the driver footwell clear.
› Only use laptops or other mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary.
› Stow small items in the storage boxes.
› Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
› Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
› Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
› Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage.
› Do not leave closed bottles of liquids in the car. Closed bottles can explode due to heat or burst due to frost.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Using assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with temporary spare wheel

The temporary spare wheel » *page 174* is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

› Inflate the wheel to the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
› Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
› Do not cover the warning label.
› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.
› Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
› Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assistance systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.

› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle, e.g. the engine intake.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

  Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.
› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely

If the vehicle is not safely secured against moving off, it can do so spontaneously and cause an accident.

› Choose a place with a suitable surface for parking; always park the car on a solid and level surface.
› Pay extra attention on downhill surfaces with reduced grip such as snow, ice, mud or sand.
› Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves or spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts may cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Select the **P** mode by pressing the P button on the automatic gearbox selector.
4. Turn off the engine.
5. Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle.

› Injuries can occur when handling seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
› The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.
› In emergency situations it may not be possible to leave the vehicle or resolve the situation.
› Very high or very low temperatures may pose a danger to life.
› The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked. This makes it impossible to open the doors or windows from the inside.
  › Turn off the SAFE function, if some persons remain in the locked vehicle » *page 30*.

Different climatic conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different climatic conditions from those specified, contact a Škoda Partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to drive the car in your country?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to ensure that the car is fully functional?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to prevent damage to the vehicle, e.g. changing the coolant, the 12V vehicle battery, and similar?

Emergency calls

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle. The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least 3 years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

› Current position of the vehicle at the time of the emergency call

› Two other vehicle positions shortly before the emergency call is triggered (driving route)

› Vehicle identification number (VIN)

› Vehicle drive type

› Vehicle type

› Type of emergency call initiation (automatic or manual)

› Call type (test or emergency call)

› Direction in which the car was travelling when the emergency call was triggered

› Direction of the accident

› Reduction of the car speed in the longitudinal direction in the event of an accident

› Reduction of the car speed in the transverse direction in the event of an accident

› Time of activation of the emergency call

› Reliability of position data

› Dataset version

› Counter of records transmitted during a call

› Number of passengers

The vehicle location data is continuously overwritten so that only the last three stored locations are available, which are necessary for the correct operation of the emergency call. The car can therefore not be permanently tracked.

The data is only processed to ensure the correct functioning of the emergency call. The data is automatically deleted from the system 13 hours after the emergency call has been initiated.

Once the connection is established, the call is made to the Škoda emergency call line in the language set in the Infotainment system.

If the Škoda emergency call line operator does not speak the set language, the call is in English.

Serious accident – automatic call

In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

Minor accident – call option

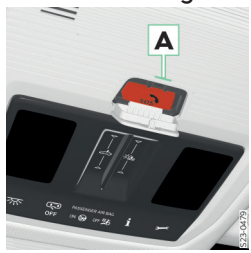
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Switching Škoda emergency call to the public emergency call system

If the Škoda emergency call service is limited or unavailable, the call is transferred to the public emergency line.

The information is passed on to the emergency call centre and the emergency services determine the necessary measures. The language of communication with the emergency call line corresponds to the geographical location of the vehicle.

The indicator light



The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

› Illuminated green – the system is functional

› Flashing green – a call is in progress with the emergency line

› Illuminated red – there is a fault in the system, seek immediate assistance from a professional garage

› Not illuminated – the system is inoperative due to prolonged unavailability of the mobile network. If this condition persists, seek assistance from a professional garage

Operation

The emergency call button is under the cover marked with the SOS symbol.

Manual call



› To **open** the cover, press against it.



1. Keep the SOS button pressed down.
2. Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre on the Infotainment screen.

If you do not confirm the call, the connection to the emergency line will be established automatically after 10 seconds.

To cancel dialling

› To cancel dialling to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again.

Or:

› Cancel dialling using the Infotainment system screen.

1 A call can be made manually, for example to report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Closing the cover

› Push the cover until it clicks audibly.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the vehicle's safety systems, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

› Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.

› Have the damaged, loaded or triggered safety system components replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the fire to the emergency services.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Key, locks and alarm

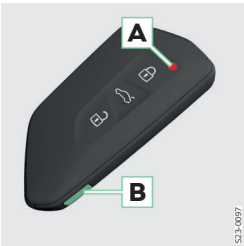
Key

Overview

⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) can lock the vehicle, start it or use electrical equipment such as the control buttons for the windows.

› When leaving the vehicle, keep the keys with you.



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light in the key
- **B** Locking button for removing the key part

NOTICE

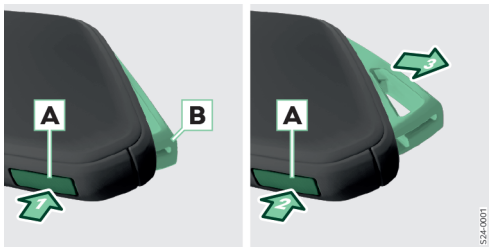
› Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

› Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

If you lose your key, contact your Škoda Service Partner who will provide you with a replacement key.

Removing the key part



1. Press the safety button **A**.

   The **B** key fob folds out.
2. Press again the **A** safety button.
3. Remove the key part.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

› The warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed.

Or:

› The display in the instrument cluster shows a message that the battery needs to be replaced.

› Replace the battery » *page 29, Replacing the key battery*.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

This may be because:

› The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » *page 29, Replacing the key battery*.

Or:

› The key is not synchronised.

Synchronise the key as follows:

1. Press any button on the key.
2. Unlock the door with the key via the locking cylinder within 1 min. » *page 31*.

If necessary, the key must be synchronised if a button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the remote control's effective range.

Replacing the key battery

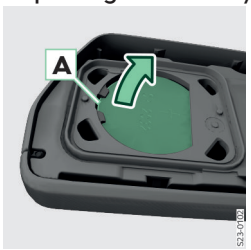
The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery

Removing the battery cover



1. Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.
2. Push downwards against the key fob to release the top cover.
3. Open the battery cover.

Replacing the battery



1. Insert a thin screwdriver into the A hole and remove the battery.
2. Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
3. Insert the new battery.
4. Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!
If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

If you are unsure about how the battery should be replaced, we recommend contacting your Škoda Service Partner.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster screen.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!
There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring *» page 34, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking and unlocking

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

All doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the speed of 15 km/h is reached. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The vehicle will unlock automatically in an accident when the airbags are activated. Automatic unlocking allows help to access the car in an emergency situation.

You can also unlock the car in one of the following ways:

› Open some of the doors from the inside.
› Press the central locking button

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

› Key » page 29
› Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 32
› Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

› Press the button in the middle part of the dash panel.

The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks or unlocks all the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Settings

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Central locking*.

All doors

All doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap unlock.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the front door and the fuel filler flap.

Applies to vehicles with keyless locking system:

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap will unlock when you grip the driver's door handle. The other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked when you grip the door handle again.

Gripping one of the other handles will unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button can be used to unlock the door on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

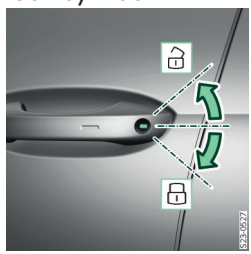
Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder

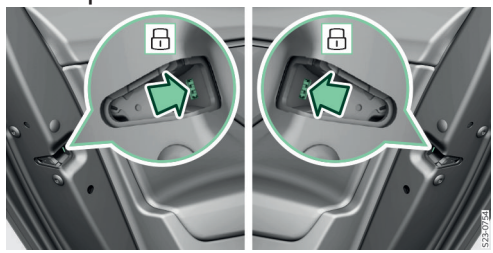


1. Insert the key part into the lock cylinder so that the key fob faces the rear of the car.
2. Unlock/lock.

Unlocking will unlock only the driver's door.

Locking will lock all doors.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 1



1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
3. Use the key part or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.
4. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 2



1. Open the door.
2. On a vehicle equipped with a slot cover, remove the cover.
3. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
4. Turn the key or the flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (sprung position).
5. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Use

The keyless locking system (KESSY) allows you to unlock and lock the car without actively using the key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

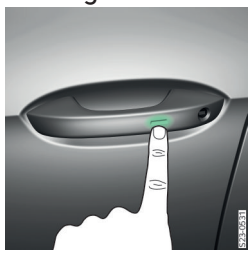
When using the functions of automatic unlocking when the key is close to the car and automatic locking when leaving the car, the battery in the key discharges faster.

Unlocking



1. Hold the door handle.
2. Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Automatic unlocking when the key is close to the vehicle

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically unlock when the key is brought close to the vehicle.

If individual doors or doors on one side of the vehicle are set to unlock, the vehicle will not unlock when the key is in the vicinity of the rear of the vehicle.

Automatic locking when leaving the car

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically lock when the key is removed from the car.

The direction indicator lights flash once to confirm that the car is locked.

If the car is not locked, an audible signal will sound twice.

If there are people in the locked car and they open the door from the inside 30 seconds after locking it, the alarm is triggered.

This applies to cars equipped with the SAFE function:

After automatic locking, when the key is removed from the car, the SAFE function is deactivated.

A beep sounds once to confirm that the car is locked and the SAFE function is deactivated.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If you lock the key in the boot, you can still open the boot lid within 2 minutes.

NOTICE

If you lock the key in the car or in the luggage compartment and it is covered by a phone, laptop or similar device, the key signal may be obscured and the car will not unlock automatically.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

   Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
3. To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

   The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanent deactivation of keyless locking

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Opening and closing* > *KESSY*.

Activating/deactivating automatic unlocking when the key is in the vicinity of the vehicle

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

Activation/deactivation of automatic locking when leaving the car

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Lock vehicle when walking away*.

Troubleshooting

Keyless locking fault

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Automatic deactivation of keyless locking

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function may be deactivated automatically. The function will be accessible on the driver's door handle only.

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

No key found when the ignition is switched on



illuminated
Message: No key found in the vehicle

› Put the key in the vehicle.

Or:

› If the key is in the box with the Phone box function that is charging your phone, remove the key from the box.

Alarm

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is automatically activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

› Opening the bonnet
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement inside the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop in the vehicle's power network.
› The trailer is disconnected
› Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Conditions

The alarm system will only operate correctly when all the windows are closed.

The trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing bracket.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.

✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm, a warning alarm will sound.

ⓘ Deactivate the alarm before connecting or disconnecting the trailer.

Settings

The following alarm functions can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing alert

Deactivation also disables the SAFE function » *page 30, Functionality*.

Deactivation

› Press twice the button on the key within 2 seconds.

Or:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* item and deactivate interior monitoring function.

The deactivated functions are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Troubleshooting

Alarm fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Doors, windows and the boot lid

Doors

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

A badly closed door can open while you are driving.

› Pull over, close the door and check that it is fully closed and secure.

⚠ WARNING

An open door may close in strong winds or on a gradient even if it is partially secured by the door limiter.

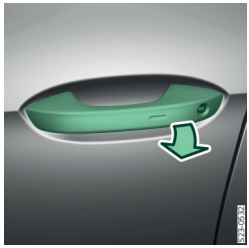
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the door when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area.

Operation

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle.

Opening from the inside



1. Pull the inner handle.
2. Push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

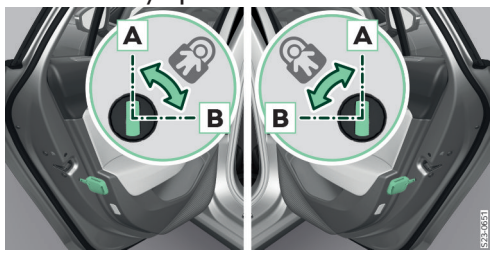
› Hold the handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child lock



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock turned off

B Child lock turned on

Electrically operated child lock



› Press the **left** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **right** rear door.

Activation of the safety lock is signalled by a light in the button.

After the safety lock is activated, the electric window control in the corresponding door is also locked.

Windows – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed again for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted and the window moves back several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, and the obstacle has not been removed, the closing process will be stopped. At this time, it is not possible to close the windows automatically by pulling the button up completely. However, the force limiter is functional.

The force limiter will not operate if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close at full force! If you wait more than 10 seconds, the force limiter will be switched on again.

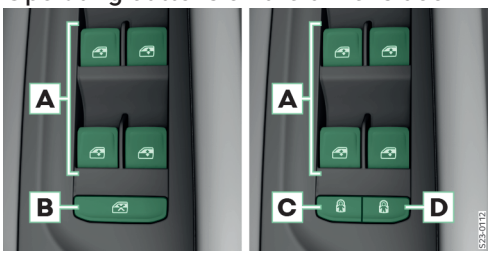
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the windows are fitted with a force limiter, exercise caution when closing them.

Overview

Operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on vehicle equipment:

A Window control buttons

B Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors.

C Deactivating/activating the button in the left rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) ***» page 35, Operation***

D Deactivating/activating the button in the right rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) ***» page 35, Operation***

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press and hold the respective button lightly until the window opens to the desired position.

Or:

› Press the control down and the window opens automatically. Pressing the control again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› Pull the respective button lightly up and hold it until the window closes to the desired position.

Or:

› Push up the corresponding control until it stops; the window closes automatically. Pushing the control up again stops the closing process.

ⓘ After the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be opened and closed for about 10 minutes, provided none of the doors is opened.

Opening all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button fully depressed down to operate the driver's window.

ⓘ The sunroof on vehicles equipped with one will be tilted up at the same time.

Closing all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button all the way up to operate the driver's window.

Or:

› On vehicles with keyless locking, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle.

Closing he windows is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

ⓘ The sunroof on vehicles equipped with one will be closed at the same time.

Settings

1. Select the › › › *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the window operation item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator stops working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism may be overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window does not operate after the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected.

› Activate window operation » *page 37, Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery*.

Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery

Automatic window operation activation

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Push up the respective button and the window closes.
3. Release the button.
4. Push up the button up again and hold it for 1 second.

Sunroof

What you should be mindful of

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the sunroof.

If you activate the control in the closing direction and an obstacle hinders the closing, the sliding of the glass stops and the glass moves back a few centimetres.

If the obstruction is not removed and you try again to close the sunroof by sliding and holding your finger in the closing direction, the anti-clamping protection will not work (if the interval between attempts is less than 5 seconds). The sunroof will then close with full force.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the sunroof has a force limiter, it should be closed carefully.

ⓘ NOTICE

› During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sunroof before opening.

› Always close the sunroof before disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery.

› When using a roof rack, close the sunroof.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Outside temperature higher than –20 °C (applies to opening the sunroof)

Operation

Opening



› Slide with your finger backwards.

Closing



› Slide with your finger forward.

Stopping/resuming the sunroof movement

› To **stop** the movement of the sunroof, press .

› To **resume** the movement of the sunroof, move your finger in the required direction.

Tilting up/closing the sunroof

› Tap .

ⓘ After the ignition is switched off, the sunroof can still be operated for approximately 10 minutes, until one of the doors is opened.

Convenience operation of the sunroof

The convenience operation allows you to tilt or close the sunroof with the key.

› To **tilt**, hold down the button .

› To **close**, hold down the button .

In a vehicle with keyless locking system, you can close the sunroof using the sensor in the front door handle.

› To **close**, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle » *page 32*.

Closing the sunroof is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

ⓘ All windows are operated at the same time as the sunroof.

Sun visor – with electric operation

Operation

Opening



› Slide with your finger backwards.

Closing



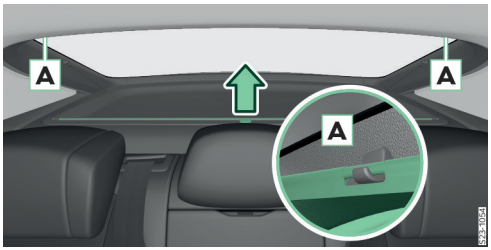
› Slide with your finger forward.

Stop/resume the sunshade movement

› To **stop** the movement of the sunshade, press .
› To **resume** the movement of the sunshade, move your finger in the required direction.

Rear window shade

Operation



Shading

› Pull the sunshade out by the handle and hang it on the A hooks.

Winding

› Remove the sunshade by the handle from the hooks and let it slowly wind up.

Rear door window shades

Operation



Shading

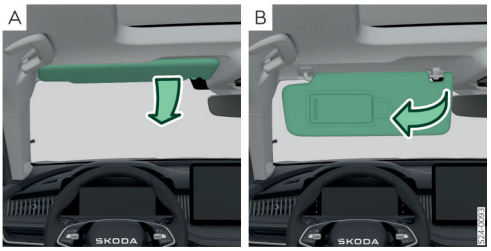
› Pull the sunshade out by the handle and insert it into the A bracket.

Winding

› Remove the sunshade by the handle from the bracket and let it slowly wind up.

Sun visors

Folding up and down



A Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen.

B Swivel the front visor towards the door.

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.
› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

ⓘ NOTICE
› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the lid prop!
› Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.
› Do not touch the strut rods with gloves or other textile objects.
› Do not push against the rods.

Operation

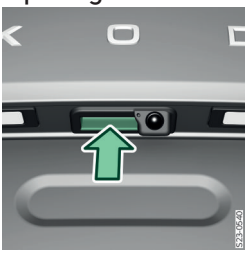
Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, hold the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

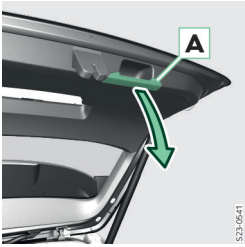
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

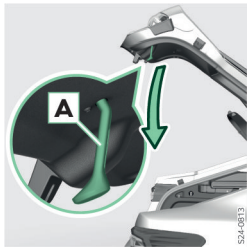
The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



Option 1

› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.



Option 2

⚠ CAUTION
Danger of the tailgate opening while driving!
› Make sure the lock is secure when the lid is closed.

Settings

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The lid's automatic locking delay can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electric operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of injury!
› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.
› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

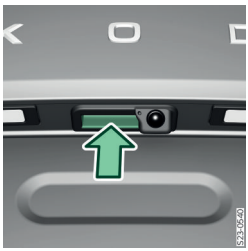
ⓘ NOTICE
› Do not operate the lid manually while it is moving.
› Before operating the lid, check that there are no obstructions in the opening and closing area that could damage the lid. Also check that there are no objects in the immediate area of the of the vehicle that could damage the interior of the vehicle and the items being transported.
› If the lid hits an obstacle while opening, it will stop and an audible signal will sound.

ⓘ NOTICE
› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the lid prop!
› Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.
› Do not push against the rods.

Operation

The lid handle



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

The button in the lid



› Press the button to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The button in the door



› To open the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid starts to open.
› To close the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid is fully closed.
› Pull or release the button to stop the lid from moving.

The button on the key



› Hold the button to open or close the lid, or to stop its movement.

Closing applies only to vehicles with keyless locking system. The key must not be in the car and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the lid.

ⓘ The lid can also be closed by briefly pulling the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of the tailgate opening while driving!

› Make sure the lock is secure when the lid is closed.

Settings

Setting and storing the top position of the lid

It is advisable to adjust the top position of the lid, e.g. if the space for opening is limited by the height of the garage.

1. Stop the lid in the desired position.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Restoring the lid to its default upper position

1. Carefully manually raise the lid all the way up.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

Lid does not respond to opening signal

› Remove any obstruction, e.g. snow.

Or:

› Press the handle in the lid and lift the lid up.

Or:

› Release the lid manually » page 41.

Lid does not respond to closing signal

› Close the lid manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Close the lid slowly, pushing on the centre of the rear edge of the lid as the lid clicks into the lock.

ⓘ An intermittent tone sounds when the lid closes by itself, for example under the weight of snow.

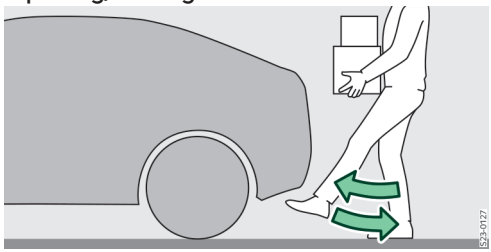
Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched off.
✓ You have the key to the vehicle with you.
✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



1. Stand behind the centre of the rear bumper.
2. Swing your foot smoothly under the bumper and back.

If the bonnet does not move, wait a few seconds and repeat the motion.

Lid opening/closing signal

The direction indicator lights flash twice when the lid is being opened or closed. In addition, an audible signal sounds when the lid is being closed.

Stop/resume lid movement

You can stop the lid movement by smoothly swinging your foot. The lid movement is resumed by a subsequent swing of your foot.

⚠ CAUTION

Some activities at the rear of the car may cause the lid to be opened or closed unintentionally.

› If necessary, deactivate the contactless operation of the boot power lid » *page 41, Settings*.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Heavy rain
› Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Easy Open* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Easy Open* item.

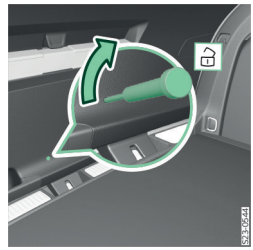
It is recommended to deactivate the feature in the following cases:

› Installing the roof rack
› Connecting a trailer or other accessories to the towing bracket
› Washing the vehicle
› Maintenance and repairs to the rear of the vehicle

Releasing the boot lid

Self-help

If the boot lid does not open, it can be released manually from inside using the following procedure:



1. Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the lid lining
2. Release the boot lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

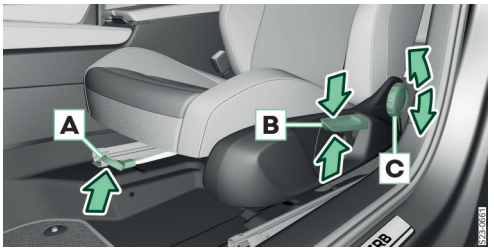
Seats, steering wheel and mirrors

Front seat – with manual operation

Operation

⚠ WARNING

› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



A Adjusting in longitudinal direction
The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.

B Adjusting the height

C Backrest tilt adjustment
Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.

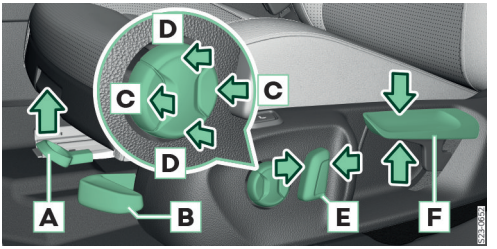
ⓘ After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Front seat – with partial electrical operation

Operation

⚠ WARNING

› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



A Adjusting in longitudinal direction
The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.

B Adjusting the seat tilt

C Adjusting the lumbar support: degree of curvature

D Adjusting the lumbar support: position of curvature

E Backrest tilt adjustment

F Adjusting the height

ⓘ After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Manual seat length adjustment



1. Press the release handle.
2. Move the front part of the seat in the desired direction.

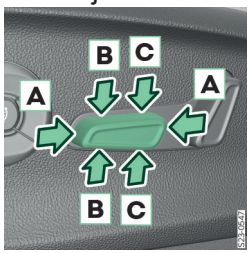
Front seats – with electrical operation

Operation

⚠ WARNING

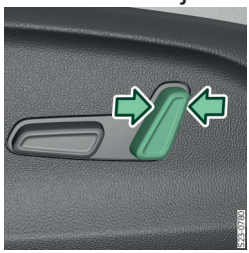
› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.

Seat adjustment

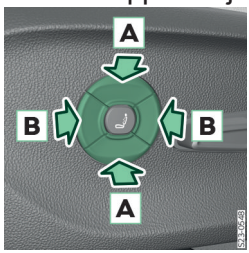


- **A** Adjusting in longitudinal direction
- **B** Tilt adjustment
- **C** Adjusting the height

Backrest tilt adjustment



Lumbar support adjustment



- **A** Curvature adjustment
- **B** The degree of curvature adjustment

Passenger seat adjustment with driver's seat controls

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: > > .

   The menu must be displayed during adjustment.
2. Adjust the passenger seat using the driver's seat controls.

Synchronization of the passenger seat with the driver's seat

The function allows you to adjust the passenger seat to the same position as the driver's seat.

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: > > .
2. Hold the *Synchronise* button pressed down.

Manual seat length adjustment



1. Press the release handle.
2. Move the front part of the seat in the desired direction.

Seat memory

Functionality

Applies to vehicles with an electric seat operation.

Each memory button on the seat allows you to store and then recall a set position for the seat and wing mirrors.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

The driver's seat can be equipped with a convenience entry function, depending on vehicle equipment.

If the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened, the seat is moved to an easy access position.

When the door is closed and the ignition switched on, the seat returns to the stored position.

Passenger seat – convenience entry function

The passenger seat can be equipped with a convenience entry function, depending on vehicle equipment.

When the passenger door is opened, the seat is moved to an easy access position.

When the door is closed, the seat returns to the stored position.

Operation

Control with the ignition off and the door open

› Press the desired memory button to **retrieve** a stored position.

› To **stop** changing the position, press any button on the seat being adjusted or on the key, except for the button for adjusting lumbar support and the button on the seat.

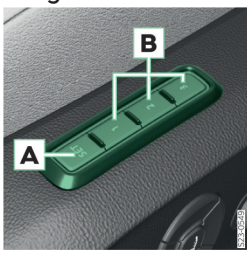
Control in other cases

› Hold down the desired memory button to **retrieve** a stored position.

› To **stop** the change of position, release the memory button.

Settings

Saving the position of the seat and the wing mirrors for forward movement



1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Adjust the seat and the wing mirrors.
3. Press the A button and within 10 seconds press one of the memory buttons B.

Saving is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

ⓘ You can store the seat position if the angle of inclination between the seat and the backrest is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in one of the extreme positions.

Saving the position of wing mirror on the passenger's side for reversing

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
4. Select the *Mirrors* item and activate the folding wing mirror function.
5. Switch the wing mirror control to **R** position.
6. Engage reverse gear.
7. Set the mirror to the desired position.
8. Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is stored in memory.

ⓘ When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Convenience entry function

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

> > > *Interior* > *Seats*

Or:

> >

Seat massage function

Switching on/off



Option 1



Option 2

› Press the button.

Settings

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: > > .

The following items can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Type of massage program
› Duration
› Intensity

The set massage program is stored in memory.

You can also switch the massage off or on in the menu displayed.

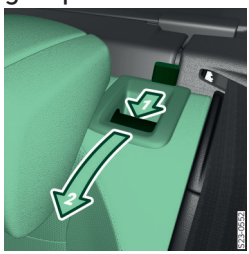
Rear seats

Folding down

Before folding down

1. Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
2. Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded-down backrests.
3. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

Folding the backrests from the passenger space



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

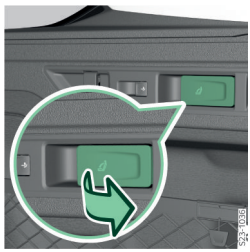
Folding the backrests from the luggage space



› Pull on the handle.

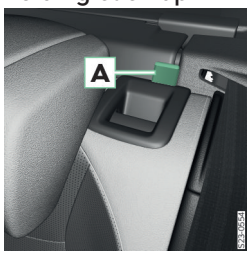
The backrest is released and partially folded down.

Option 1



Option 2

Folding back up



1. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
2. Fold the seat backrest back up.

   The release handle should click audibly into place.
3. Check that the backrest is locked in place. The A pin must not be visible.

Headrests

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!

› When the rear seat is occupied, the headrest must not be in the lower position.

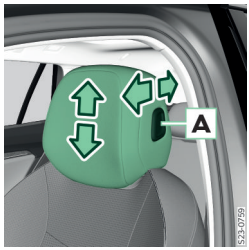
› Adjust the headrest to a locked position so that its upper edge is as level as possible with the top of the head.

This is indicated by the following sticker on the sidewall above the tailgate lock:



Settings

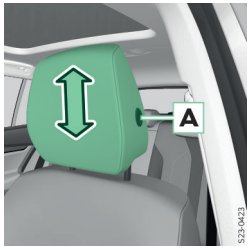
Front headrests



› Hold the locking button A and move the headrest in the desired direction.

You don´t need to hold the locking button to move forward.

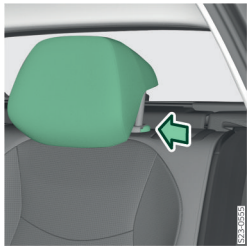
Option 1



› Hold the locking button A and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Option 2

Rear headrests



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing it down, press and hold the locking button.

Folding headrest parts at the rear

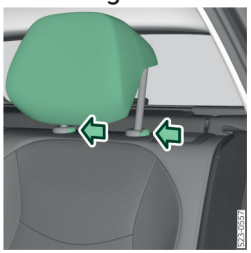
The folded side parts restrict the free movement of the head sideways, e.g. when sleeping.



1. Adjust the headrest to the first extended position.
2. Fold down the side parts of the headrest.

Removing and inserting

Removing the rear headrests



1. Partially fold the respective backrest down.
2. Move the headrest up to the stop.
3. Press the locking buttons and at the same time remove the headrest.

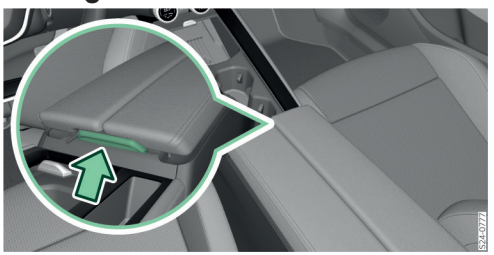
Inserting the rear headrests

› Insert the headrest into the backrest.

The locking button must click into place.

Front armrest

Settings



Opening the armrest

› Press the button in the front part of the armrest to open.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!

› The front armrest must be closed while driving.

Rear armrest

Settings

Folding down



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Adjusting in longitudinal direction



› Pull the armrest fully forwards in the direction of the arrow or push it fully backwards.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Push the armrest all the way back before folding it back.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the armrest with care.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not sit on the armrest.

Opening in the backrest

Folding up and down

Opening from the passenger space



1. Press the top of the lid.
2. Pull on the release handle.
3. Lower the lid.

Opening from the luggage compartment



1. Press the safety catch.
2. Lower the lid.

Closing

› Close the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks audibly.

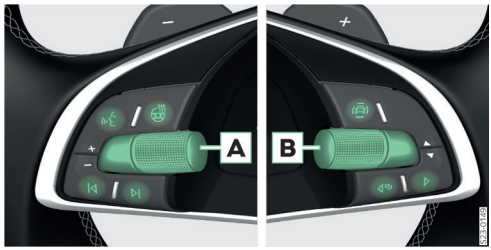
When closed, the red mark on the rear of the lid must not be visible above the safety catch.

⚠ WARNING

› Use the opening in the backrest only for transporting skis in the secured bag of the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- Switching voice control on/off
- Steering wheel heating *» page 76*
- **A** **Turning** – adjusting the volume
  Pressing – switching the sound on/off
- Switching to the next track/station played
- Switching to the previous track/station played
- Switching some assist systems
- **B** **Turning** – switching/setting
  Pressing – confirming

The ◁ and ▷ buttons are used for controlling the virtual cockpit *» page 77*.

Settings

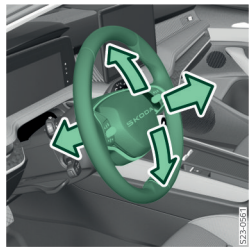
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› The steering wheel position can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



› Pull the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering fault

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminates – partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, you may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock fault

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Once the ignition has been switched off, it is no longer possible to switch on ignition, lock the steering or switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not active

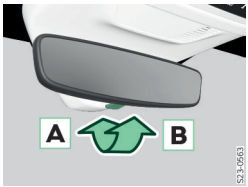
flashing
Message indicating the required steering wheel movement

1. Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
2. If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interior mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror not darkened
B Mirror darkened

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled by the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

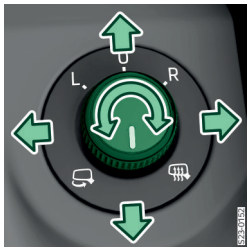
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the control



L Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switching off operation
R Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
Folding the mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different control position)
Heating the mirrors with the ignition switched on

Adjusting the mirror surface

1. Select the position **L** or **R**.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

ⓘ The vehicle is not necessarily locked when the mirrors fold in. Vehicle locking is indicated by flashing turn signal lights.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by pressing with your hand.

Synchronous mirror glass adjustment

If this function is activated when the driver's mirror glass is being adjusted, the passenger's mirror glass will also be adjusted.

Mirrors with memory

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

You can store the current setting of the exterior mirror glass in the driver's seat memory » page 44.

Folding the passenger's mirror glass when reversing

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

For better visibility when reversing, the passenger's mirror will fold down to the position stored in the driver's seat memory » page 44.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The mirror position is stored in memory.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The mirror control is in **R** position.

The mirror automatically returns to the default setting when the vehicle is driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance of vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of mirror damage!
› If the electrically foldable mirror is accidentally knocked out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible click.

Settings

Automatic folding of wing mirrors, synchronized setting of mirror glass and folding the passenger mirror when reversing can be activated or deactivated in the following way:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Mirrors* and activate or deactivate the feature.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the electric mirror glass control

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of getting burned!
› Do not touch the heated exterior mirror glass.

Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery

Activating automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Switch the wing mirror control to position.
3. Switch the wing mirror control to **0** position.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Use

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt if it is pulled suddenly. The belts lock, for example, during sudden braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled suddenly, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Belt tensioners on the front and rear seat belt retractors increase the safety of the **belted up** driver, the front passenger and the rear seat passengers wearing their seat belts.

During a collision of certain force, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner to prevent unwanted body movement.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of overturning, **light** collision or accidents in which no major forces are produced.

🛈 Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioners

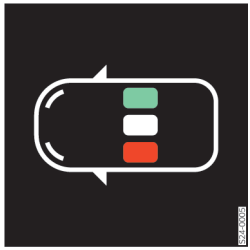
Vehicles with Proactive Passenger Protection are equipped with reversible belt tensioners .

Reversible belt tensioners increase the safety of the belted driver and passenger by automatically pulling the seat belt towards the body and then releasing it in critical driving situations.

Belt tightening can also occur, for example, after the car starts moving or when driving slowly in a traffic jam.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminates or flashes – unfastened seat belt at the front or rear



The indicator lights show when the rear seats are occupied and when the seat belts are fastened.

- Green – seat occupied, seat belt fastened.
- Red – seat occupied, seat belt not fastened.
- White – seat not occupied

⚠ WARNING

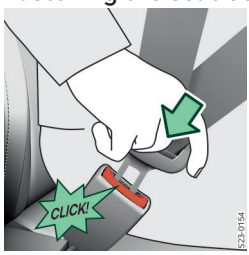
Passengers may not be recognised by the system if they weigh less than 35 kg.

- Always check that passengers are wearing their seat belt correctly before driving.

If you ignore the warning light and continue driving without fastened seat belt, a warning ⚠ and seat belt failure message will appear on the Infotainment system screen. This is not a fault, but a reminder to wear a seat belt when driving.

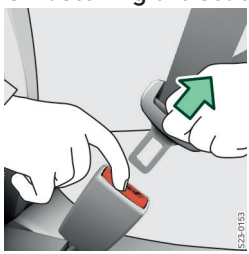
Operation

Fastening the seat belt



1. Hold the lock tongue and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
2. Insert the lock tongue into the buckle until there is an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to ensure that the lock tongue is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt



1. Hold the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
2. Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings

Raising



› Slide the turning loop up.

Lowering



1. Press the lock.
2. Slide the turning loop down.
3. After adjustment, check that the belt turning loop is properly secured and that the belt locks securely by pulling sharply on the belt.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



1. Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
2. Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
3. Pull on the strap to check if the retractor is working properly.
4. If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
5. If the strap is still blocked, seek help from a specialist garage.

Message indicating a driver's seat belt fault

⚠ illuminated

Message indicating a driver's seat belt fault

If the Infotainment system screen shows ⚠ and a message about a fault in the driver's seat belt, the driver's seat belt has not been worn repeatedly during the journey. This is not a fault, you must always wear your seat belt when driving.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

⚠ WARNING

› When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact be-

tween the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.

› Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
› If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
› When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
› If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

› When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.
› For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat in the front passenger seat

When using a child seat in the passenger seat, all country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

› Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, which is protected by an active airbag in front of the child.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:

A



B



A Sticker on the front passenger's sun visor

B Sticker on the centre pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat in the front passenger seat:

› When using a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag » page 58.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and another child seat that may be placed behind it.
› Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.
› Position the front passenger seat belt as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the child being transported!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› Activate the front passenger airbag when you are no longer using a rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat.

Applies to Taiwan.

In accordance with the legal regulations, toddlers, infants and children are not allowed to sit in the front seat. This is indicated by the following sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles, they are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the Škoda website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2–3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 129 regulation. The ECE-R 129 regulation classifies the child seats based on the child ´s height.

Group	Weight of the child	Hight of the child	Age of the child
0	up to 10 kg	40–83 cm	0–15 months
0+	up to 13 kg	40–87 cm	0–24 months
1	9–18 kg	45–105 cm	0–4 years
		76–105 cm	15 months – 4 years
2	15–25 kg	100–125 cm	3.5–7 years
3	22–36 kg	100–150 cm	3.5–12 years

Group 0/0+

Child car seats designed for rearward-facing transport from birth up to approximately 24 months of age, corresponding to a child's height of approximately 40–87 cm.

Group 0+/1

Child car seats designed for transport from birth to approximately 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 40–105 cm.

A child up to 76 cm tall must be transported with his/her back against the direction of travel.

Group 1

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 76–105 cm.

Group 1/2

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 76–125 cm.

Group 2

Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 100–125 cm.

Group 3

Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 12 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 100–150 cm. For transportation on a booster seat, the height of the child must be at least 125 cm.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX system

Group	Size category of child seat[a]/category ISOFIX	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
0 (up to 10 kg)	E/R1	X	IL
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E/R1 D/R2 C/R3	X	IL
1 (9–18 kg)	D/R2 C/R3	X	IL
	B/F2 B1/F2X A/F3	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	X

a) The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

Group	Size category of child seat[a]/categoryISOFIX	Rear seats	
		Outer seats	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E/R1	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E/R1 D/R2 C/R3	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D/R2 C/R3	IL	X
	B/F2 B1/F2X A/F3	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IL	X

a) The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

"IL" The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

"IUF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats permitted for use in this weight category.

"X" The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system retaining rings.

i-Size

Group	Direction/category ISOFIX	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
Child seat	Rear-facing/R2	X	i-U
	Forward-facing/B2, F2X	i-U	X
Booster seat	Forward-facing/B2, B3	i-B	X

Group	Direction/category ISOFIX	Rear seats	
		Outer seats	Centre seat
Child seat	Rear-facing/R2	i-U	X
	Forward-facing/B2, F2X	i-U	X
Booster seat	Forward-facing/B2, B3	i-B	X

"i-U" The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the "Universal" category.

"X" The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the "Universal" category.

"i-B" The seat is suitable for a forward-facing Group 2/3 booster seat and also for forward-facing i-Size "Universal" child seats for a body height of 125–150 cm.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Group	Direction	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
0 (up to 10 kg)	–	X	U [a)]
0+ (up to 13 kg)	–	X	U [a)]
1 (9–18 kg)	Rear-facing	X	U
	Forward-facing	U	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	U	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	U	X

[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

Group	Direction	Rear seats	
		Outer seats	Centre seat [a)]
0 (up to 10 kg)	–	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	–	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	Rear-facing	U	U
	Forward-facing	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	–	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	–	U	U

[a)] It is not permitted to install a child car seat with a support leg on the rear centre seat.

“U” The seat is suitable for child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight group.

“X” The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter ***» page 51, What you should be mindful of***.

ISOFIX

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The retaining rings for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.

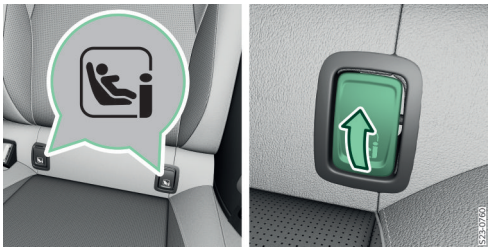
⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

1 A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a Škoda Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.



ISOFIX in the passenger seat



ISOFIX in the back seats

› Remove the protective caps before fitting the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats with the TOP TETHER system can only be used on seats equipped with mounting retaining rings with the TOP TETHER symbol.

› To mount the TOP TETHER system, only rings with the TOP TETHER symbol can be used.

› Only attach 1 belt of the child seat to the TOP TETHER mounting retaining ring.

› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object can be attached to the same TOP TETHER retaining ring.

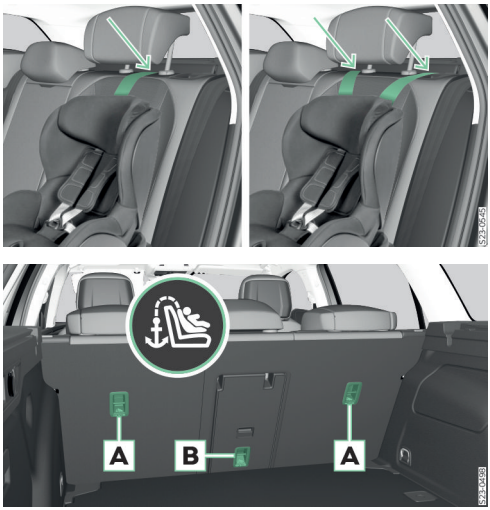
The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the rear seats

The TOP TETHER strap can be attached in two ways:

› Between the headrest guide bars

› Around the headrest guide bars



Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the back seats

The TOP TETHER belt mounting retaining rings are located on the outer rear seats **A**, or also on the middle rear seat **B**. Mounting TOP TETHER retaining ring is also on the passenger seat.

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER strap can be attached between the headrest guide bars.



Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the passenger seat

Airbags

Use

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection to the seat belts during severe frontal and side collisions.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. It only provides protection when combined with a seat belt and only in this way does it provide maximum protection.

What you should be mindful of

The airbag system can only perform its protective function if all occupants are belted and properly seated.

In some situations, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated » *page 58, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not place your limbs in the airbag deployment area.
- No persons, animals or objects such as » *page 57* cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the front airbags!

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. This can prevent the front airbags from deploying.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive force, e.g. impacts, on the backrests.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by Škoda.
- Any damage to seat covers at the side airbag location must be repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends using seat covers from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Functionality

The inflated airbag absorbs the forward movement of the body reducing the risk of injury.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the airbags inflate. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

The airbags **will not deploy** in the following situations:

- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

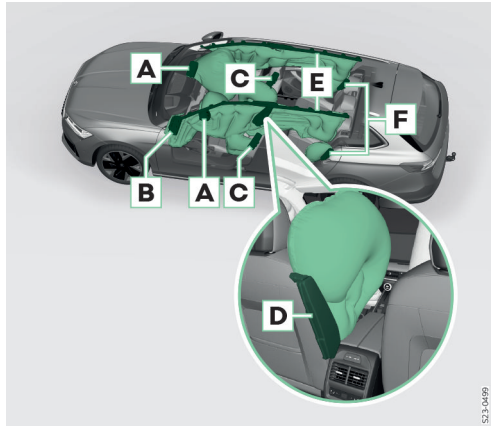
Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

If the airbags are deployed in an accident, the whole vehicle will be unlocked at the same time. Depending on the extent of the damage, you can lock the vehicle after an accident as follows:

1. Open the driver's door and close it again.
2. Lock the vehicle.

Overview

The location of airbags is marked **AIRBAG**.



- **A** Front airbags
- **B** Driver's knee airbag
- **C** Side airbags – front
- **D** Central airbag between the driver's seat and the passenger seat

E Head airbags

F Side airbags – rear

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on to activate the airbags.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag » *page 58, Operation* should be deactivated by a Škoda Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

› With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.

› Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.

› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

› If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer about this.

Airbag or seat belt retractor deactivated by the diagnostic device

illuminates for 4 s after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 s

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

illuminated

Message indicating an airbag fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Passenger front airbag switch

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

› A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.

› The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of malfunction in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

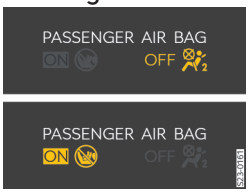
⚠ WARNING

Risk of unexpected activation of the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident!

› After deactivating the passenger airbag with the key part, do not leave the key part inserted in the switch while driving. Shocks may cause the key part to rotate in the notch and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Passenger front airbag status indication



Indicator light in the overhead panel

› When the ignition is switched on, both indicator lights will illuminate briefly.

› If the system is OK, they will both go out.

› One of the following indicator lights will then come on depending on the position of the switch:

OFF illuminated – passenger front airbag is deactivated

ON illuminated 65 seconds after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag is activated

Operation

Passenger front airbag switch is located on the side of the dashboard.

Before switching the passenger airbag off/on

› Remove the key part.

Switching passenger front airbag on/off



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the passenger door.
3. Insert the key part upwards into the notch in the switch.
4. To **switch off**, carefully turn the switch to the **OFF** position.

To **switch on**, carefully turn the switch to the **ON** position.

5. Remove the key part from the notch.
6. Close the passenger door.
7. Switch on the ignition and check that the passenger's front airbag indicator lights are illuminated.

Troubleshooting

Passenger front airbag switch fault

 illuminated in the instrument cluster together with OFF in the overhead panel

The passenger front airbag does not deploy in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, lights are functional when the ignition is switched on.

The automatic mode is always switched on after the ignition is switched on.

Automatic mode

When the automatic mode is switched on, the lights automatically adjust to the driving and ambient light conditions.

› Switching parking lights and low beam on/off automatically » page 61.

› Switching daytime running lights on/off automatically » page 61.

If the automatic mode is not switched on and the system determines that the lights need to be switched on, the indicator light ☼ in the instrument cluster will light up.

☼ illuminated

› Turn on the lights.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Automatic mode is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for correct lighting of your vehicle.

› Turn on the lights manually if the current lighting conditions require it.

Operation

Light switch



☼ Selecting the lights mode

› Press repeatedly the ☼ button.

Switching on/off the bad weather lights » page 62

Switching on/off the rear fog light » page 63

Light modes

› Automatic mode **AUTO**

AUTO illuminates in the switch. If the low beam is also switched on automatically, and will also light up in the switch.

› Low beam mode

illuminates in the switch.

› Parking lights mode

illuminates in the switch.

› Switching the lights off **OFF**.

Information on the selected mode is briefly displayed on the instrument cluster screen.

If the car is travelling at a speed of more than 10 km/h or covers a distance of more than 100 m, the parking lights mode and switching the lights off mode are not available.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

For headlight tilt adjustment, the following condition must be met:

✓ Engine running

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights*.
4. Select the item for setting the headlight range.
5. Use the slider to adjust the range of the lights. The range must correspond to the load of the car.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can also be used.

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Headlight range is set automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can result in poor road lighting or can dazzle other road users.
› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Headlight settings for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights* and set the feature *Travel mode:*.

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

The headlights meet the requirements for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction. No headlight adjustment is necessary.

Troubleshooting

Defective LED light source

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears on the screen indicating a lighting fault.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Car lighting malfunction

If a message indicating a car lighting malfunction appears, the lights will work in emergency mode.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Daytime running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Automatic activation/deactivation

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Automatic activation of lights

Functionality

Switching lights on automatically in low light

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Automatic activation of lights is indicated by illuminating the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching lights on/off automatically in low light

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers have been switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic switching on headlights function is set in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and set the required functions.

Troubleshooting

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

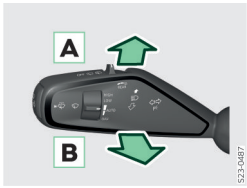
illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam headlights work when the headlights are switched on.



A Switching on high beam

B Switching off high beam / switching on headlight flasher

When the high beams or the headlight flasher is on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

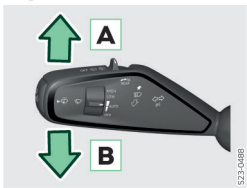
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on right turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

B Switching on left turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

Turn signal – convenience turn signal

Convenience turn signal causes the turn signal lights to flash three times without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate or deactivate the *Convenience turn signal* feature.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster – right turn signal light defective

› Check the right signal light

flashes faster – left turn signal light defective

› Check the left signal light

Trailer turn signal light fault

does not blink when trailer is connected – trailer indicator turn signal fault

› Check the trailer lighting.

Lights for bad weather

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Bad weather lights are one of the light modes that help to improve road illumination in poor visibility conditions when standard lights lose their effectiveness.

Operation

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.



› Press the button for bad weather lights.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

The light is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met:

✓ Low beam is switched on.

✓ Driving speed is up to 110 km/h.

Rear fog light

Operation



› Press the rear fog light button.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the ⚠ button in the middle of the dashboard to switch them on/off.

The hazard warning lights may switch on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically during start-up or acceleration.

Switch on the hazard warning lights e.g. in the following situations:

› When traffic slows down suddenly or when you reach the end of a traffic queue.
› When the vehicle is stationary in traffic
› When towing

When the hazard warning system is active and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights function

Use

Double parking light

The double parking light function switches on the sidelights when the vehicle is parked.

Single parking light

The single parking light function switches on the sidelights on one side when the vehicle is parked.

Operation

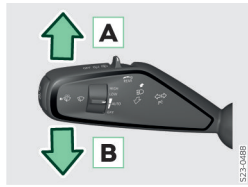
Double parking light

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the lights mode .
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The lights may switch off automatically if the 12V vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12V vehicle battery may discharge.

Single parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right.
B Switch on the sidelights on the left.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever to the appropriate position.
3. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The Corner function

Functionality

The Corner function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the area in front of the vehicle depending on the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply.
✓ Low beam is switched on.
✓ The driving speed is below 40 km/h.

Headlights adaptive function

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The adaptive headlight function ensures that the light path is optimised to suit the current driving situation.

Operating conditions

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

✓ Engine running
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode

Settings

Dynamic cornering light feature activation/deactivation

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic cornering light* feature.

The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions

Functionality

The Coming Home function turns on the light after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door opened. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The feature Leaving Home turns on the light in the following cases:

› Unlocking the vehicle with the remote control
› When the key is brought near (if the vehicle is equipped with headlights with adaptive functions, keyless locking (KESSY) and the light-up function is activated when approaching the vehicle)

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Comfort lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Comfort lights* item and set the function.

When the engine is switched off, a menu appears on the Infotainment system screen where the Coming Home feature can be activated/deactivated.

High beam Light Assist assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!

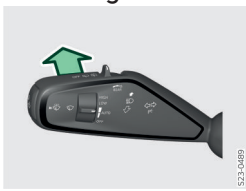
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.
✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.
› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Light Assist* feature.

Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam mode is switched on, it adjusts the light trail to avoid dazzling drivers in oncoming traffic and in vehicles driving in front of you.

When driving in the dark on the motorway, it dims the light trail on the side of the dividing strip to avoid dazzling the drivers in oncoming traffic. These cars might not be recognized by the assistant because their headlights may be obscured by the dividing strip.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

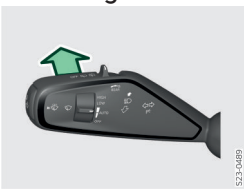
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
✓ The driving speed is above 30 km/h (in some countries higher than 60 km/h).
✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.
› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working. The system can also identify such a vehicle as a single-track vehicle.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic Light Assist* feature.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is open
› Switching ignition off

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

ⓘ If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Lighting operation

Front and rear lights on/off

OFF Deactivating automatic switch-on (OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the respective light.

You can adjust the intensity of the light by holding your finger on it. The set intensity is not stored in the memory when the light is switched off.

Automatic switching the footwell lighting on/off

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

It also switches on automatically when the doors are opened, e.g. when getting in or out of the vehicle.

Switching on the make-up mirror illumination in the windscreen sun visors

› Slide off the make-up mirror cover.

Settings

Backlighting of the switches and instruments

The intensity of backlighting of switches and instruments can be set in one of the following ways:



1. Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

   A window will open with a slider for setting the backlight intensity.
2. Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Or:

1. Select the > > > *Interior* menu.
2. Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Backlighting of the Infotainment screen and the central console illumination

Applies to vehicles without background lighting.

You can set the following functions in the Infotainment system:

› The colour of the Infotainment screen backlight:
  › Automatically, based on the selected driving mode.
  › Manually, using the slider
› The intensity of the central console illumination

1. Select the > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the item for interior lighting and set the required function.

Interior background lighting

Use

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

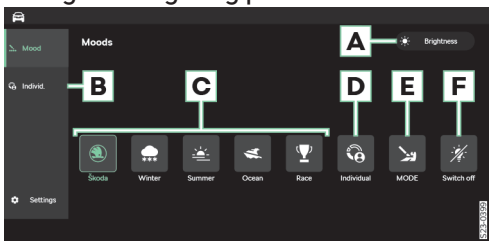
The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

When the vehicle is locked, the lights will briefly turn red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the illumination will briefly turn green. When certain doors are opened, the illumination in these doors will turn red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

You can set the background lighting in the Infotainment system menu > .

Background lighting presets



A Adjusting the overall lighting intensity

B Setting the colours and intensity of the lighting for the user preset

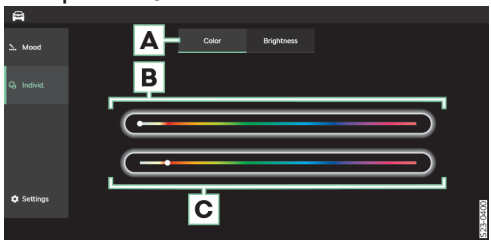
C Factory presets

D User preset

E Automatic preset
  › The colour and intensity of the lighting automatically change depending on the selected driving mode of the car.

F Switching off the lighting

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset



A Tab for setting the lighting colours

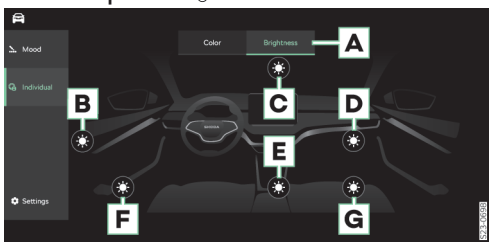
B Slider for setting the dashboard and door lighting colour

C Slider for setting the lighting colour of the footwell, ceiling and door storage compartments

Set-up procedure:

1. Select the user preset .
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting colours.
3. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting colour.

Setting the brightness of the lighting for the user preset



- **A** The tab for setting the lighting intensity.
- **B** Doors
- **C** Ceiling
- **D** Dashboard
- **E** Storage compartment in the central console
- **F** Door storage compartment
- **G** Footwell

Set-up procedure:

1. Select the user preset.
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting intensity.
3. Select the area, for which you want to set the lighting intensity.
4. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting intensity.

Wipers and washers

Operating conditions

- ✓ Bonnet closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed
- ✓ Ignition on

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

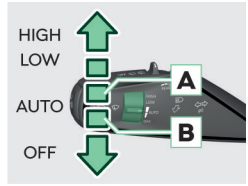
› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

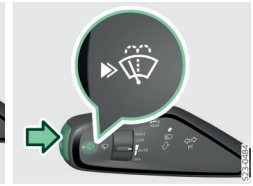
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen!

› Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry.

Wiping and washing the windscreen





HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

AUTO Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

- › Position **A** – higher sensor sensitivity
- › Position **B** – lower sensor sensitivity

OFF Switching off

Washing and wiping

- › Press to the first position – single windscreen wipe
- › Press to the second position – washing and wiping the windscreen

Wiping and washing the rear window



Sprung position

- › Washing and wiping the glass
- › Washing the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Convenient rear wiper function

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Applies to Superb Combi.

If the windscreen wipers wipe continuously, the rear wiper will automatically wipe at regular intervals.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

You can activate or deactivate the comfort automatic rear rain wiper function in the Infotainment system as follows:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers*.
4. Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the climatic conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the washer

› Do not remove the strainer from the neck of the tank when refilling the washer fluid.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine compartment components

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

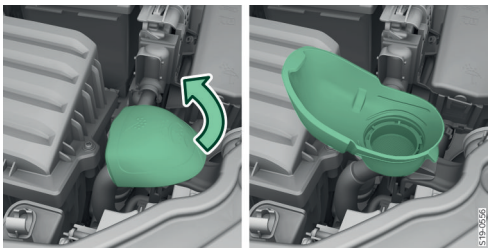
The windscreen washer tank is in the engine compartment » page 16.

The tank capacity is 3 litres. If the tank is located on the left side of the engine compartment, its capacity is 3.65 litres.

Depending on the type of engine, the car is equipped with one of the following tanks:



Option 1



Option 2

1. Open the engine compartment lid » page 157.
2. Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
3. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
4. Close the tank sealing cap.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid too low

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Wipers fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully detach frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and remove any snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

Folding the wipers away from the windscreen

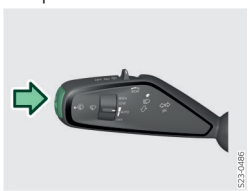
In order to fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen, it must first be set into the service position.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

› Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.



1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. Within 10 seconds, press the button on the control lever in the direction of the arrow to the first position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds.
3. Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.

Or:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers* and then wiper service position.

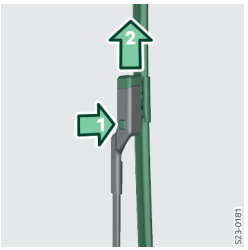
4. Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.

Replacing a wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

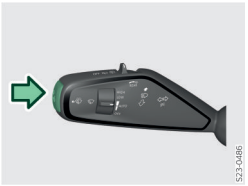
Risk of accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.



1. Press the safety catch and hold it.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Insert the new wiper blade in until it clicks into place.

Folding the wipers back



1. Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on the ignition and press the button on the wiper control lever to the first position.

Heating and air conditioning

The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

- It is recommended to use the automatic mode with a set interior temperature of 22 °C to reliably and efficiently achieve the desired conditions in the car interior.
- It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

- Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

- Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Coolant in the air conditioning system

The information about coolant can be found on the label in the engine compartment at the front.

⚠ Warning: air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

The coolant is flammable.

Air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

Specifications and quantity of coolant

Lubricating oil specification

Information about the coolant used

Coolant designation	Coolant weight	CO_2 equivalent	Global Warming Potential (GWP)
R1234yf	0.450 kg	0.0002 t	0.501
	0.460 kg	0.0002 t	

The coolant in the air conditioning contains fluorinated greenhouse gases.

The fluorinated greenhouse gases are contained in a hermetically sealed device. Installed electrical components have a leakage rate of less than 0,1 % per year.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

The refrigerant is flammable and can explode when heated. It can produce poisonous gases on contact with hot surfaces.

- Have the air conditioning system serviced only by qualified service technicians trained to the required standard, e.g. SAE J2845.
- Keep the vehicle well away from sources of open flames or sparks.

Functionality

Automatic mode

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature and prevents fogging of the windows.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Air Care

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the interior of the car. It also recirculates and cleans the air.

Doors and windows must be closed to ensure proper operation.

- To activate/deactivate the function, press ⁘ > ✨ > ♨ on the Infotainment system screen.

Activation of the function is indicated by the green colour of the ♨ button.

Deactivation of the function is indicated by the white colour of the ♨ button.

“Heating” function

The function allows you to simultaneously switch on the heating of some of the following features:

› Windscreen
› Rear window
› Steering wheel
› Seats

› To activate/deactivate the function, press CLIMA below the > infotainment on the Infotainment system screen.

Heating of selected items of the function can be activated/deactivated in the menu Other air conditioning settings » page 71.

Cooling system operating conditions

✓ External temperature above 2 °C
✓ Engine running
✓ Fan switched on

Operation

The air conditioning is controlled using multi-function dials (Smart Dials).

› Pressing the control: switching between functions
› Rotating the control: setting the selected function



A Left control
  › Temperature setting for the left-hand side
  › Setting the heating and ventilation for the left front seat

B Centre rotary control – settings for selected functions:
  › Fan speed
  › Air distribution
  › Smart air conditioning presets

  Setting basic functions » page 86

C Right control
  › Temperature setting for the right-hand side
  › Setting the heating and ventilation for the right front seat

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

MAX Switching the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 74, Operation

AUTO Switching automatic mode on
  This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Switching on/off the maintenance of the interior temperature based on the driver's temperature setting

› Press and hold the multi-function control on the driver's side.

ⓘ Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the screen at the back of the centre console.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the multifunction control screen:

LO Maximum cooling power
HI Maximum heating power

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

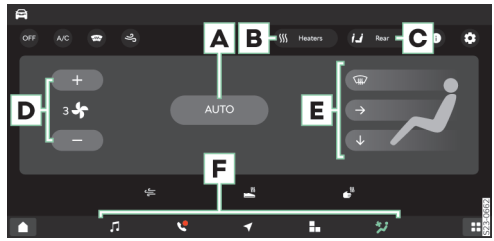
Settings

Setting up air conditioning

› Tap ⁘ > .

Or:

› Tap in the preferred applications.



A Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power
B Switching the “Heating” function on
C Rear settings screen
D Setting the fan speed
E Setting the direction of the air outlet
F Option to set air conditioning to your favourite applications » page 81, Operation

Information on air conditioning

Other air conditioning settings

OFF Switching the air conditioning system on/off

Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation

Warm air flow to footwell preset

Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating

Outdoor air flow to interior preset

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the Air Care on/off

To start the preselect option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

When switched on, the air conditioning will start as set before switching off.

Switching off the preset also switches off the steering wheel heating. This applies even if the steering wheel heater was manually switched on before the preset was activated.

The selected preset is switched on for a limited period of time.

Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the screen at the back of the centre console.

Other air conditioning settings

› Tap in the air conditioning settings menu.

The following menu will appear:

Activation/deactivation of selected items of the "Heating" function (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Seats
› Steering wheel
› Windscreen
› Rear window

Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Electric auxiliary heater
› Automatic windscreen heating

Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Automatic switching on of seat heating / ventilation
› Automatic switching on of the steering wheel heating

If this function is activated, the heating/ventilation will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats or steering wheel and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switching on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

In the following cases, the cooling may shut down spontaneously:

› Coolant temperature too high
› Engine load too high

Independent auxiliary heating and ventilation

Use

The independent heating warms up the interior of the car and the engine.

The independent ventilation allows fresh air to enter the vehicle when the engine is switched off. This reduces the interior temperature, for example in a vehicle parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of poisoning!

› Do not turn on the independent heater in an enclosed space.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of fire!

› Switch off the independent heater before refuelling.
› The exhaust of the independent heater is at the bottom of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop where the exhaust fumes could come into contact with highly flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.

Functionality

The system heats or ventilates the car's interior depending on the temperature setting in the independent heating menu.

The system uses fuel from the fuel tank for heating.

Operating conditions

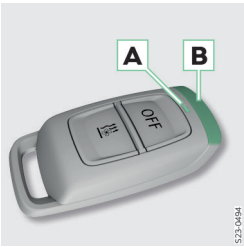
✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.
✓ Sufficient fuel supply, in the instrument cluster is not illuminated.

Operation

Depending on vehicle equipment, it can be equipped with a remote control.

Switching on/off by remote control

› Hold the corresponding button.



A The indicator light
B Antenna
OFF Switching off
Switching on

ⓘ Hold the remote control with the antenna facing up.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect the remote control against moisture, strong shocks and direct sunlight.

Indication of the indicator light on the remote control

› Illuminates 2 seconds in green – switching on
› Illuminates 2 seconds in red – switching off

Remote control range

The range of the remote control with a charged battery is up to several hundred metres. The range may be limited for example by obstacles or weather conditions.

Switching on/off in the Infotainment system

1. Press > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Press in the menu displayed.

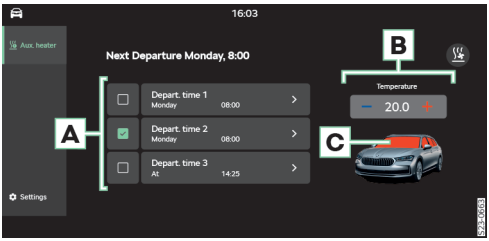
Indication of the indicator light in the instrument cluster

When the independent auxiliary heating is turned on, will illuminate.

Setting automatic activation

Settings and information on the Infotainment system screen

› Press > on the Infotainment system screen.



A Preset list, preset activation/deactivation, setting a preset
B Setting the desired temperature
C Red windows symbolize the heater is on. Blue windows symbolize the ventilation is on.
Immediate activation
Setting the independent auxiliary heating

Only 1 of the presets can be activated at a time.

ⓘ An activated preset is deactivated after automatic start-up if the independent heater is on. To start another preset, it must first be activated.
An activated preset remains activated after automatic start-up,if the independent ventilation is on.

ⓘ You can change the set temperature when the independent heating is on using the multifunction controls (Smart Dials).

› If the multifunction controls are not switched on, press the button to switch on the Infotainment system.

Setting the departure time

1. Press > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired preset.
3. Set the departure day and time in the displayed menu.

ⓘ Departure time must be set more than 60 minutes before the departure, otherwise the preset is not activated.

ⓘ When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on at the next set time.

Setting the operation time

1. Press > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Use the scroll bar in the displayed menu to set the operation range of the independent heater.

You can set the independent heating for max. 60 min.

You can switch on the independent heating repeatedly. The maximum operating time of the independent heating is 180 minutes, after which the system locks up. Further switching on is possible after the car has begun to move.

ⓘ Independent auxiliary heating can also be set in MyŠkoda » page 115 application.

Troubleshooting

Smoke in the engine compartment

Smoke and odours can form in the engine compartment when the independent heater is in operation. This is not a fault.

Operation of the independent heater after it is switched off

After switching off, the independent heater remains running briefly to burn off any residual fuel in the heater. This is not a fault.

Indicator light in the remote control

flashes regularly
No power-on signal received › Approach the vehicle.

flashing irregularly
The independent heater may be blocked for any of the following reasons: Lack of fuel › Refuel. Insufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery › Drive a distance of several km to recharge the 12V vehicle battery. Malfunction › Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

flashing
No power-off signal received › Approach the vehicle.

flashes or illuminates
Discharged battery in the remote control › Replace the battery.

Replacing the battery in the remote control

⚠ WARNING

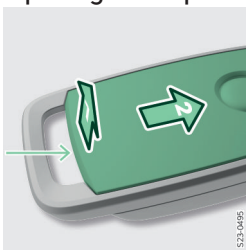
Danger to life!

If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.

› Always keep children away from the remote control and the battery.

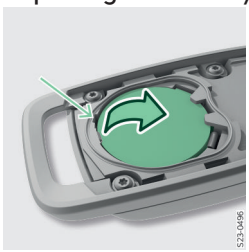
› If the battery is swallowed, seek medical assistance immediately.

Opening the flap



1. Release the cover at the marked point with a thin flat-head screwdriver.
2. Fold the cover off and slide it out.

Replacing the battery



1. Release the cover at the marked point with a screwdriver.
2. Replace the battery.
3. Replace the cover and press it down until it clicks audibly.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the remote control in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Windows heating

Use

Window heating is used to defrost or defog the glass.

Conditions

✓ Engine running

✓ Outside temperature is below approx. 35 °C

✓ Sufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

Operation

Rear window heating

› Press the button on the Smart Dials multifunction control panel.

Windscreen heating

› Tap > > .

Or:

› Tap > in the preferred functions.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after a certain period.

If the heating is on and the engine is switched off and back on again within about 10 minutes, heating continues.

The windscreen defogging/defrosting mode

› Press the MAX button on the Smart Dials multifunction control panel.

Settings

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heater will automatically switch on if there is a risk of the windscreen fogging up.

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: ⁘ > > .
2. Select the item for automatic windscreen heating

Or:

1. Tap > in the preferred functions.
2. Select the item for automatic windscreen heating

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  › The seat is not occupied.
  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Conditions

✓ Engine running

✓ Sufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

Operation

Depending on vehicle, the front seats can be heated, or heated and ventilated. Rear outer seats can only be heated.

Front seat heating / ventilation

The seat heating/ventilation is controlled as follows:

› Using the multifunction controls (Smart Dials)

› In the Infotainment system (on vehicles equipped with seat ventilation)

Operating by multifunction controls (Smart Dials)

› Pressing the relevant control – switching between functions

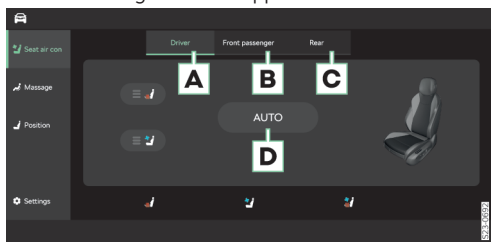
› Rotating the relevant control – setting the selected function

The Infotainment system controls

This applies to cars equipped with the seats ventilation

› Tap > > .

The following menu will appear:



- **A** Displaying the settings for the driver
- **B** Displaying the settings for the passenger
- **C** Rear settings screen
- **D** Switching on automatic mode
- Setting the heating intensity in manual mode
- Setting the ventilation intensity in manual mode
- Preset Maximum heating – the seat heating is switched on at the highest intensity.
- Preset Maximum ventilation – seat ventilation is switched on at the highest intensity.
- Preset Drying – seat heating and ventilation is switched on at the highest intensity.

  Presets are only available in automatic mode. When any of the preferences are activated, the automatic mode is set.
- Seat air conditioning settings

  In the menu shown, you can set the heating/ventilation intensity separately for the seat and backrest.

ⓘ The Maximum heating, Maximum ventilation, and Drying presets are switched on for approximately 3 minutes after the button is pressed.

Automatic mode

When the automatic mode is on, the system automatically regulates the heating/ventilation to achieve seat temperature and humidity comfort.

If you adjust the heating/ventilation intensity manually, the automatic mode will switch off.

Rear seat heating

› Press the or button on the rear centre console.

Or:

1. Tap > > *Rear* in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap or .

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

Heating/ventilation intensity indicator

The heating/ventilation intensity is indicated by the number of indicator lights on:

› On the screen of the multifunction controls (Smart Dials)
› On the Infotainment system screen in the seat heating/ventilation control menu
› In the button on the centre console at the back (applies to rear seats)

If you switch off the engine when the heating/ventilation is switched on and restart it within approximately 10 minutes, the front seat heating/ventilation will continue as set before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Setting automatic switching on of front seats heating / ventilation

If this function is activated, the seat heating/ventilation will switch on depending on the outside temperature and the seat temperature.

1. To activate/deactivate the function, press > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the seat heating/ventilation level in the menu *Switch on at start of journey depending on temperature*.

Blocking the increase in rear seat heating intensity

› Tap > > *Rear* > REAR on the Infotainment system screen

If the function is switched on, the heating intensity can only be reduced on the centre console at the back.

🛈 The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Steering wheel heating

Conditions

✓ Engine running
✓ Sufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

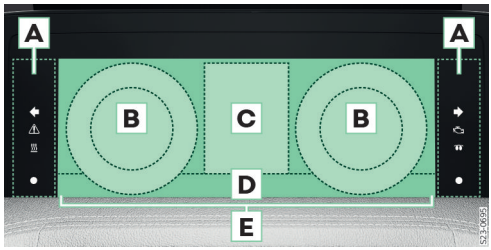
Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

🛈 By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off, or switched on at the intensity that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Virtual cockpit

Overview



A Bar with indicator lights

B Screen area with selected information:
- Engine oil temperature indicator
- Coolant temperature gauge
- Navigation
- Driving data
- Compass direction display
- Distance travelled
- Audio information

C Central screen area with selected information:
- Speed
- Driving data
- Map
- Driver assist systems

D Screen area with selected information:
- The set mode of automatic gearbox selector
- Time
- Indicator lights
- Assist systems information
- Fuel gauge
- Outside temperature

❄ – low outside temperature

E Display

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**

› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Operation

Overview of buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



A **Rotating** – switching between items / setting values / manually rescaling the map

Pressing – toggling between displaying the menu on the right/left side of the screen

Rotating and pressing – turning on automatic map scaling

◁ or ▷ – – toggling the screen option

Showing a menu of selected information on the screen

› Tap the A button to display the menu on the right-hand side of the screen.

› To display the menu on the left-hand side of the screen, press the A dial **twice**.

› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

› To confirm the information item selection, press the A dial.

The option of switching between information items is indicated by arrows and is only possible for a short period of time.

Settings

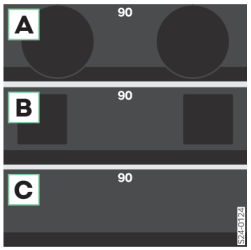
Setting the language
On the Infotainment system in > .

Setting the time
On the Infotainment system in > .

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the Infotainment system menu > > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*.

Selecting the screen variant and content
› Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly to select one of the following screen variants.



A Classic
B Modern
C Reduced

› Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly to select one of the following screen variants (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Driving data
› Driver assist systems
› Navigation
› Sport

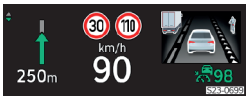
Head-up screen

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

Functionality
The Head-up display projects the selected information onto the windscreen in the driver's field of vision.



The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

Restrictions
The function may be limited or unavailable in strong sunlight.

Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings
› Select the > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.

The following items can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Deactivating/activating the Head-up screen
› Position
› Brightness
› Colour scheme
› Selecting the projected information

The position can also be adjusted by rotating the A rotary button on the multifunction steering wheel.



Driving data

Overview
The driving data screen works when the ignition is switched on.

On the instrument cluster screen
Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster screen shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

In the Infotainment system
The following data is displayed on the Infotainment system screen:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption

Memory
The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

From the start
› Driving data from the time when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term
› Driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 h and 59 min. driving time or 9,999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From refuelling
› Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Displaying driving data on the instrument cluster screen



› Tap the A button to display the menu on the right-hand side of the screen.
› To display the menu on the left-hand side of the screen, press the A dial **twice**.
› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

Displaying driving data in the Infotainment system

In the > > menu.

Selecting and resetting the driving data on the instrument cluster screen



› To **select** the memory for the driving data displayed, press .
You can only select the driving data memory in the central area of the screen.
› Turn the A button to select the relevant memory.
› To **reset** the displayed driving data memory, hold down the A button.

Selecting the Infotainment system memory

1. Select > > .
2. Select the required memory type.

Resetting the Infotainment system memory

1. Select > > > *Interior* > *Driving data*.
2. Reset the selected memory.

Or:

1. Select > > .
2. Pressing the **0.0** resets the relevant memory.

Resetting the long-term memory also clears (resets) the range calculation data.

Settings

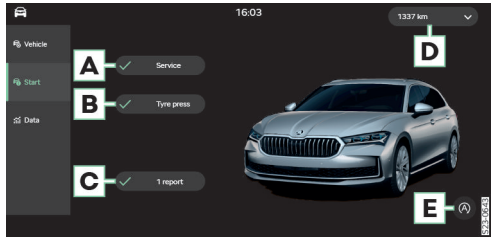
Setting units

On the Infotainment system in > .

Vehicle status

Overview

The vehicle status can be displayed in the following menu of the Infotainment system > > .



A Service dates and vehicle identification number (VIN)
B Tyre pressure check
C Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number
D Distance travelled
E Activated/deactivated START-STOP

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages indicating the fault are displayed on the instrument cluster screen when the ignition is switched on.

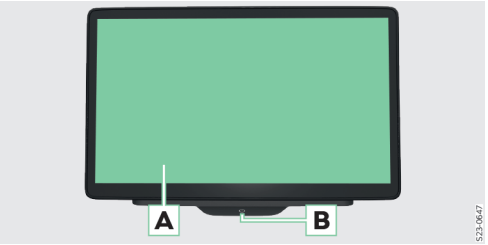
Fault messages can also be displayed in the Infotainment system.

The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights (serious hazard) or (warning) continue to be displayed.

Getting to know the Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview

Overview



A Touchscreen

B Depending on the status:

› **The Infotainment system off**

› **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on

› **The Infotainment system on**

› **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off

› **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

HOME menu

Use

HOME menu is used to quickly start up preferred functions.

Buttons with functions can be configured and rearranged.

› To display the HOME menu, tap the ⌂ button on the Infotainment system display.

Settings

Displaying the next page

› Press the display and drag left or right.

Changing a preferred menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap to highlight the tile you want to change.
3. In the function list, tap the function you want to place in the highlighted tile.

   Only functions that can be placed in the highlighted tile are displayed in the list.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Adding a page in the HOME menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap **+**.

   HOME menu can have a maximum of 5 pages.
3. Select the desired page layout.
4. Tap the *OK* button to confirm.
5. Tap the *Finish* button.

Removing a page in the HOME menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap the *Delete page* button.
3. Tap the *OK* button to confirm.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Preferred functions

Operation

In the left top part of the Infotainment system screen, there is a bar of favourite functions. Depending on the type of the Infotainment system, you can set up as many as 5 favourite functions or menus here.

Adding a preferred function

1. Hold the finger on any of your favourite functions in the Favourite functions bar.

   Or:

   Tap **+** in the Favourite functions bar.
2. Tap to highlight the position in the favourite functions bar where you want to place the desired function.

3. In the list of available functions, tap the desired function that you want to place in the highlighted position in the bar of favourite functions.
4. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Removing a preferred function

1. In the favourite functions bar, hold your finger on the function you want to remove.
2. Tap ⋮ > 🗑.
3. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Favourite applications

Operation

A bar with favourite applications is located in the lower part of the Infotainment system screen. You can move here up to 6 applications from the **Applications** menu.

Adding a preferred application

1. Tap ⠿ > *Edit*.

   Or:

   Hold the finger on any of your favourite applications in the Favourite applications bar.
2. Drag the desired application from the **Applications** menu to the favourite applications bar.
3. Tap the ✓ to finish.

Removing a preferred application

1. Tap ⠿ > *Edit*.

   Or:

   Hold the finger on any of your favourite applications in the Favourite applications bar.
2. Drag the desired application from the favourite applications bar to the **Applications** menu.
3. Tap the ✓ to finish.

Main menu

Use

The main menu shows the available Infotainment settings and functions.

The main menu can be displayed by tapping 🚗 on the Infotainment system screen.

Settings

The layout of the buttons in the main menu can be customised as follows:

1. To activate edit mode, hold down any button.
2. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
3. Move the button to a different position.
4. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Applications menu

Use

The Applications menu displays the available Infotainment system applications.

The applications menu can be displayed by tapping ⠿ on the Infotainment system screen.

Settings

The layout of the buttons in the Applications menu can be customised as follows:

1. Press the *Edit* button.
2. Move the button to a different position.

   Or:

   Drag the button from the favourite applications bar to the desired location in the Applications menu.
3. Tap ✓.

Logout screen

Use

The logout screen is displayed when the ignition is switched off. This allows the selected functions to be activated before leaving the vehicle.

🛈 The items of the selected functions depend on the vehicle equipment and can only be displayed under certain conditions.

Settings

Set the display of selected feature items on the logout screen as follows:

1. On the logout screen, press ✎.
2. Add or remove the desired items.

   Drag an added item up or down to change its order.
3. Press ✎ to confirm your changes.

🛈 If a system update is available, the item to install it will always appear first.

Configuration assistant

Functionality

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on and after the Infotainment system is switched on, it is necessary to carry out configuration.

› For manual display tap 🚗 > ⚙ > 📱 > *Configuration wizard*.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Settings

Setting basic functions

The following basic Infotainment functions are set in the menu > > :

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap > > .
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

After restoring the factory settings, Škoda Connect services will no longer be active. To activate them, you must restart the Infotainment system and reactivate the services.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determining system version

› Tap > > > *System Information*.

System update

If there are available Škoda Connect services, you can update the system by using the Over-the-Air update» *page 119*.

If Škoda Connect services are not available, you can contact a Škoda Service Partner. If a mandatory update is available, your Škoda Service Partner will contact you.

Sound

Settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the > menu.

For example, the following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

You can also control the sound volume using the centre multifunction controller (Smart Dials) » *page 86*.

The Infotainment system controls

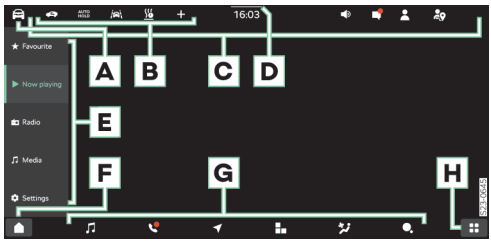
Display controls

What you should be mindful of

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Overview



- **A** Displaying the main menu
- **B** Preferred functions
- **C** Top bar of the Infotainment system screen
- **D** Displaying the Infotainment system control centre
- **E** Bar with buttons of the displayed menu
- **F** Displaying HOME menu
- **G** Favourite applications
- **H** Displaying the Applications menu

Operation

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

For help with gesture control, see the instructions in the Infotainment.

Displaying control help

› Tap > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions can be set in the menu > > *Display*:

› Display background image
› Confirmation tones

Keypad

Overview

The layout of the keypad characters depends on the currently set keypad language and the set Infotainment language.

Keypad types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Input keypad
› Search keypad

Operation

The Infotainment system keypad can be used to enter characters, letters and digits.

The keypad is displayed automatically when the Infotainment system prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

You can enter search terms including diacritical characters.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› To use, press repeatedly on the keypad until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Hold the symbol to display other variants of the symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Settings

Additional keypad languages can be set in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Additional keypad languages*.
2. Select the desired languages.

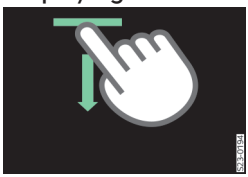
Control centre

Use

The Infotainment control centre provides quick access to preferred functions.

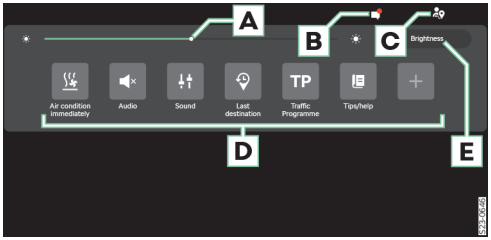
Overview

Displaying the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Control centre



- **A** Setting the instrument and key illumination
- **B** Displaying the notification list
- **C** Setting maximum privacy mode
- **D** Preferred functions
- **E** Displaying Head-up display brightness settings and display/switch illumination

Closing the control centre

› Tap the bar at the bottom of the control centre and drag it up.

Or:

› Tap the Infotainment system screen outside the control centre

Settings

The preferred functions buttons can be set in the following way:

1. Display the control centre.
2. Tap an empty button with the + symbol or hold your finger on an occupied button.
3. To add a favourite function, tap to mark the desired position and then tap the button of the desired function.

   Or:

   To delete a favourite function, tap to mark the desired position and then tap ⋮ > 🗑.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Vice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

The dialogue can be interrupted at any time and a new command can be given. There is no need to wait for the response to complete.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition of voice and control of other vehicle functions, e.g. searching for special destinations.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

For answering more complex questions, online voice control can use the artificial intelligence features based on ChatGPT from OpenAI (**https://openai.com**). In this case, the system will indicate this fact in the response. Voice commands are always the responsibility of the user, who must ensure that this does not violate legislation or the rights of third parties. The ChatGPT may be incorrect, inaccurate, incomplete or offensive and the user should always verify the veracity of the output and the appropriateness of its use.

Extended online voice control

Enhanced online voice control of the vehicle extends the functionality to search for navigation and POI online using the vehicle's current GPS position. This option will refine the relevance of the search results speeding up the system's response and allowing you to control other online functions.

Laura newsfeed

Laura newsfeed provides useful tips, suggestions, and warnings based on your driving habits. These tips, suggestions, and warnings appear in the Laura application and Laura in the HOME menu.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions

In order to use the voice control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The vehicle is set to privacy mode.

Extended Voice Control – conditions

In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ Access to the current GPS position of the car is granted.

You give your consent during the registration of the Škoda Connect services or in the MyŠkoda mobile application.

Operation

Switching voice control on

› Press on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** or a customised saved activation command.

The symbol will appear after activation.

Entering a voice command

› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

You can speed up voice control as follows:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.

› Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot". If this procedure is unsuccessful, try using different words in the wording of the command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control

A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Tap , when Laura is waiting for a voice command.

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Terminating the voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** while a voice command is being entered.

Restrictions

Voice control is not available for some Infotainment languages. The Infotainment system will alert you to this when you set the language.

For some Infotainment system languages, voice control is only available in a limited mode. For more information, tap in the Laura application.

The directional microphone only obeys the voice commands of the user who has woken up the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

The voice control cannot be used during an ongoing telephone call.

Settings

Voice control is set up in Laura application.

Displaying the Laura application

› Tap > .

Or:

› Tap in the preferred applications.

Activation customisation by voice

› Tap in Laura application.

The following functions can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Activating the voice assistant by voice

› Enable/disable the default activation command

› Create your own activation command

Voice assistant settings

› Tap ⚙ in Laura application.

Or:

› Tap 🚗 > ⚙ > ⚙ > *Voice assistant*.

The following options can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Categories of Laura newsfeed function
› Dialogue tone
› Voice assistant volume and voice

Giving/revoking consent to the voice assistant to access the current GPS position of the vehicle

› In Laura application tap 💬 > *Basic functions*.

ⓘ Consent can also be set in MyŠkoda application.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say ***"Help"***.

The ***"Help"*** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying control help

› Tap 💬 in Laura application.

Or:

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say ***"tutorial"***.

Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls

Overview

The centre console features 3 multifunction dials (Smart Dials) for controlling some of the car's functions.



A Interior temperature and left seat heating/ventilation intensity

B Currently selected function of the centre control

C Interior temperature and right seat heating/ventilation intensity

Operation

› **Pressing the control:** switching between functions
› **Rotating the control:** operating currently selected functions
› **Pressing and holding the control on the driver's side:** switching on/off interior temperature maintenance based on the driver's temperature setting
› **Pressing and holding the centre control:** displaying the configuration menu of the centre control in the Infotainment system

Settings

Setting up the centre control

You can assign up to 4 of the following functions to the centre control:

› Setting the fan speed
› Setting the direction of the air outlet
› Setting smart air conditioning presets
› Setting the sound volume
› Selecting driving mode
› Setting the navigation map zoom

Display settings menu

› Press and hold the centre control.

Or:

› Tap 🚗 > ••◉•• on the Infotainment system screen.

Radio

FM radio

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⁘ > ♫.

Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

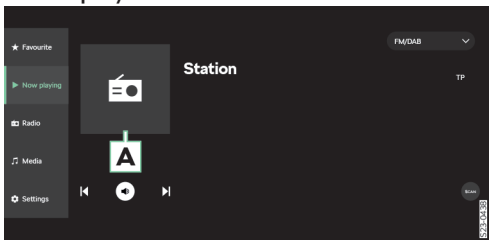
Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

› Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.

Audio player



A Station logo

⏮ Switch to previous available station

⏭ Switch to next available station
The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

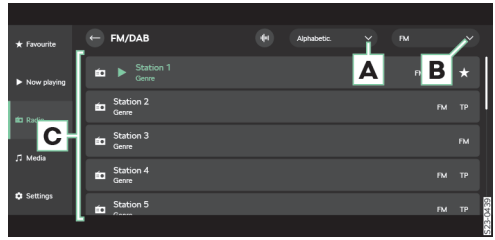
🔊 Switch sound off

🔇 Switch sound on

⌄ Selecting a frequency range

View the list of available stations

1. Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Select the desired FMband.



A List sorting option

B Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List of available stations

← Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

Finding stations manually

ⓘ The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > ✎.
2. To delete one preset, tap 🗑 on the preset.

   Or:

To delete all presets, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

The Scan function

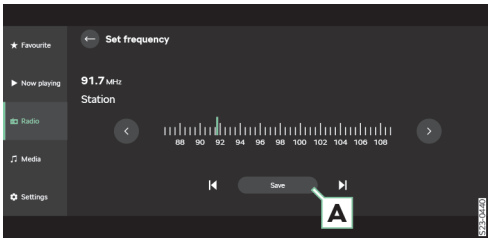
The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

1. Display the radio player.
2. To start playback, tap SCAN.
3. To stop playback, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

1. View the list of available stations.
2. Tap .

For FM stations, the button is available only if the *FM* option is selected in the **Radio/media** application in the band selection > .



Scroll to previous available station

Scroll to next available station

< / > Step-by-step search

A Saving the currently tuned station to the preferred station presets

To search, you can use the frequency range scale.

› Press the pointer and move it to the desired position.

Keys /

To set the mode of switching between stations using the / buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear window for receiving radio signals.

Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Switching receiving Traffic Programme (TP) on/off

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Switching the RDS on/off

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the RDS function is off, the following items will not be available when setting FM stations:

› Traffic programme (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switching radio text reception on/off

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Radio text*.

Advanced setting

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

When the function is activated and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the Infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *RDS regional:*.
2. Select one of the following menu items:
   › *Fixed* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.

› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Adding station logos

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired station.

   Or:

   Tap > the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Automatically select station logo*.

Regional FM station logo

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Station region logo*.

DAB radio

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap > .

Or:

› Tap in the preferred applications.

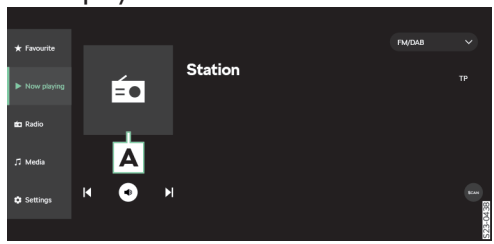
Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

› Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.

Audio player



A Station logo

Switch to previous available station

Switch to next available station
The method of switching depends on the setting of the > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

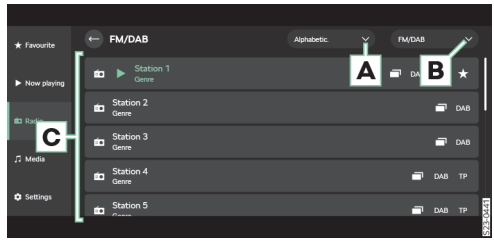
Switch sound off

Switch sound on

Selecting a frequency range

View the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Select the desired DABband.



A List sorting option

B Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List of available stations

← Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.

The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > ✎.
2. To delete one preset, tap on the preset.

   Or:

   To delete all presets, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

1. Display the radio player.
2. To start playback, tap SCAN.
3. To stop playback, tap SCAN.

Keys ⏮ / ⏭

To set the mode of switching between stations using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear window for receiving radio signals.

Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

Settings

Switching receiving Traffic Programme (TP) on/off

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Switching DAB stations additional announcements on/off

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Switching radio text reception on/off

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Radio text*.

Advanced setting

Switching on/off automatic retuning to a similar DAB station

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically retunes to another DAB station with a similar content.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switch to a similar station if reception is poor*.

Adding station logos

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired station.

   Or:

   Tap ✎ > the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Automatically select station logo*.

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Also show DAB image gallery and information*.

WEB radio and podcasts

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⁘ > ♫.

Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

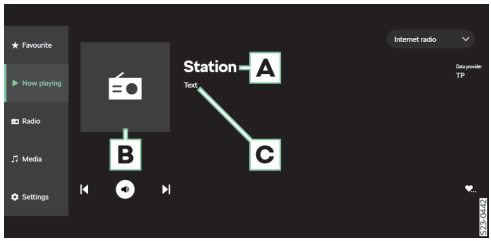
› Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.

Web radio player

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap 📻 > ⌄ > *Web radio*.
2. Select the web station from the display lists.

   Or:

   Tap 🔍 to search a web radio station.
3. Tap ▶ in the menu on the left.



A Station name

B Station logo

C Broadcast content information

⏮ Switch to previous available station

⏭ Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

🔊 Switch sound off

🔇 Switch sound on

♥... Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

🛈 If the grey 🌍 symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

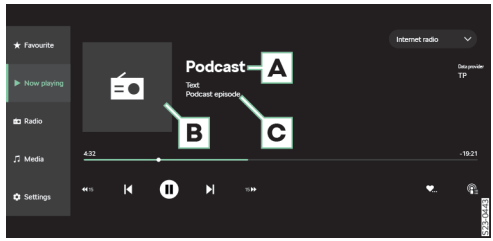
Podcast player

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap 📻 > ⌄ > *Web radio*.
2. Select the podcast from the display lists.

   Or:

   Tap 🔍 to search podcasts.
3. Tap ▶ in the menu on the left.

🛈 The podcasts are marked with the 🎙 symbol in the displayed lists.



A Podcast name

B Podcast logo

C Broadcast content information

▶ Starting playback

⏸ Pausing

⏮ Switch to previous available station

⏭ Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

⏪15 Rewind 15 seconds back

15⏩ Fast forward 15 seconds

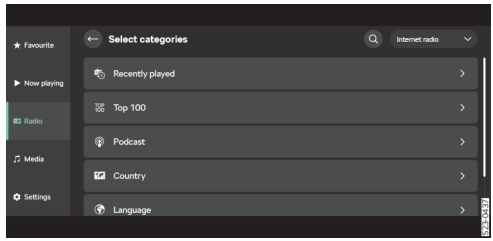
♥... Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

🎙 View episodes from the podcast being played

🛈 If the grey 🌍 symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap 📻 > ⌄ > *Web radio*.



🔍 Searching for web radio stations and podcasts

Web radio stations and podcasts last listened to

Top 100 favourite radio stations based in the Infotainment system language setting

🎙 Searching and selecting podcasts

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the country

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the language

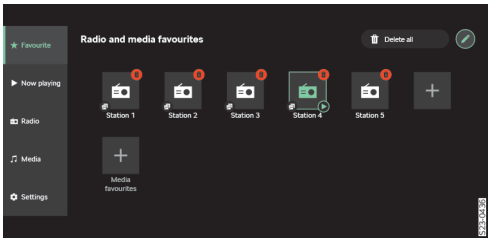
Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the content

The podcasts are marked with the symbol in the displayed lists.

Preset radio stations and podcasts

You can store stations from all available frequency ranges, web radios and podcasts in the presets.

› Tap ★ in the **Radio/media** menu.



+ Storing the currently playing station or podcast

Switching the edit mode on/off

› *Delete all* – deleting all preferred station and media presets

› – deleting the desired preset

› – changing logo

Changing the position of saved presets

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired preset, until it is released.
3. Move the preset to a different position.

Conditions

✓ The vehicle has an active data licence.

You can extend the data licence after the expiry date from the Shop The Infotainment system menu.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > .
2. To delete one preset, tap on the preset.

   Or:

   To delete all presets, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Keys ⏮ / ⏭

To set the mode of switching between stations using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

Settings

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

1. To set the sound quality, **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Audio quality online:*.
2. Select high or low quality.

The quality setting affects the volume of data consumed by the data link.

The quality is also affected by the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback drop-outs occur, reduce the audio quality.

Media

Audio player

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⁘ > ♫.

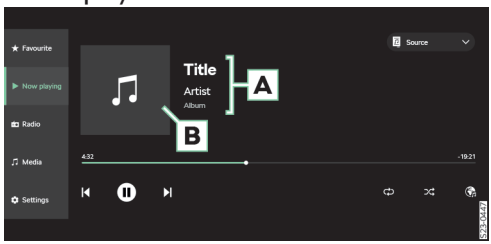
Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Media player



A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B The album image

Video player



A Name of the track being played

Stretching the image

Downloading an image

Operation

Operation – basics

▶ Starting playback

⏸ Pausing

⏮ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

⏮ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

⏮ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

⏭ Tapping: playing the next track

⏭ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

🛈 You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

🔂 Turn on/off repeat playback of the current track

🔁 Turn on/off repeat playback of the current album/folder

🔀 Turn on/off random playback of the current album/folder

Saving the track you are playing to "*My playlist*"

Managing "My playlist"

1. Tap ♫.
2. Tap repeatedly ← until the media list of the current source is displayed.
3. Tap ♫ > > ✎.

You can do the following in playlist management:

› Change the order of a track in the list by dragging it to the desired position

› Delete titles by pressing 🗑

Restrictions

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Traffic program

› To switch on/off receiving traffic news during playback of media files, tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Traffic program (TP)* in the **Radio/media** menu.

File management

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sour-

ces. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

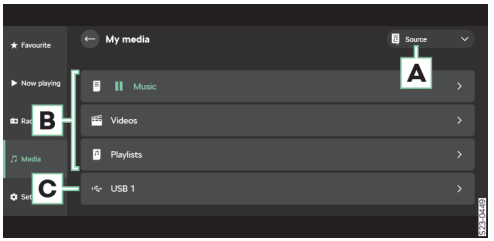
› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.

› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Media list



A Selecting a source

B Multimedia database organized into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected devices

← Displaying available resources

Favourite media

You can store the media currently playing in your preferred presets.

Depending on the available information, you can save the title, album, artist name or assigned genre of the title.

› To display, tap ★ in the **Radio/media** application.

Operation

Manage favourite media

› To save your favourite media, tap ★ > + and select the desired item.

› Tap ★ > ✎ > 🗑 to delete one favourite item.

› To delete all favourites, tap ★ > ✎ > 🗑 *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Restrictions

The availability of some media control functions depends on the connected source and the software used.

Technical data and specifications

USB

Applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS EXT3 EXT4
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	

Codec type	File extension
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MPEG H (H.265)	
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
WMV9	wmv asf

Maximum recommended video resolution is 1920×1080 and the frame rate is 60 frames per second. The following issues may occur when playing videos with a higher resolution or frame rate:

› The video will not play smoothly and the Infotainment system performance will be reduced during playback.

› The video will not play.

Supported playlists

File format	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile devices management

Using mobile devices

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

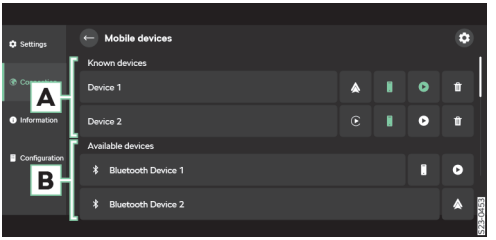
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.



A Connected/previously paired devices
B Available devices
The device enables connection via Bluetooth® "hands free" profile
The device enables connection via Bluetooth® audio profile
Removing the device from the list of previously paired devices
The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of known devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Phone

Using the phone

Overview

Displaying the Phone application

› Tap ⁘ > ✆.

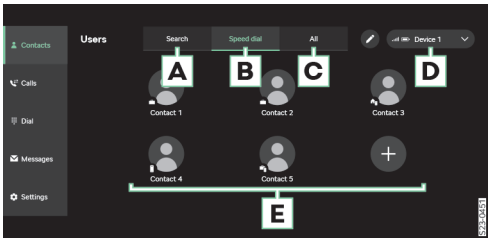
Or:

› Tap ✆ in the preferred applications.

ⓘ If the phone functions are not available, check whether the mobile device is connected.
For the Apple phones, phone functions are available either via Apple CarPlay, or Bluetooth.

Managing contacts

1. In the **Phone** application, tap 👤.
2. If you have 2 phones connected, tap ⌄ and select the required phone.

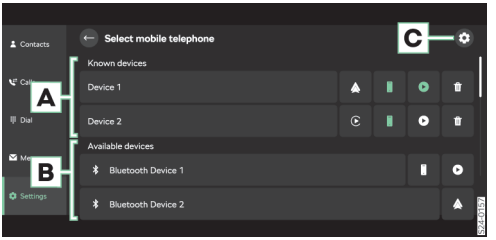


A Searching for contacts
B Displaying preferred contacts
C Displaying all contacts
D The name of currently used phone
E Presets for preferred contacts

ⓘ If the phone contacts are not displayed, check the contact import confirmation request on the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

› Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** application.



A Main phone, additional phone and known devices
B List of available phones
C The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system
▮ Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
🗑 Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

ⓘ If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the phone is switched on.

Bluetooth® of the Infotainment system can be switched in 🚗 > ⚙ > 🌐 > *Mobile device* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system is switched on.

Visibility of the Infotainment system can be switched in 🚗 > ⚙ > 🌐 > *Mobile device* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The phone is within Bluetooth® signal range of the Infotainment system.

✓ The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, it is not possible to pair new devices while driving.

Phone – Infotainment connection

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone – if no phone is connected.
› Additional phone – if 1 phone is connected
› Select which phone to replace – if 2 phones are connected

1. To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** ⌄ in any menu of the application.
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone – Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of known devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Managing contacts

Operation

Displaying preferred contacts

› In the **Phone** application, tap .

Storing a preferred contact

1. Tap +.
2. Select or search for the required contact.
3. If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

Deleting a preferred contact

› Tap > in the **Phone** application.
› To delete one preset preferred contact, tap on the preset.
› To delete all preferred contacts, tap *Delete all* and confirm.

Changing preferred contacts position

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired contact until it is released.
3. Move the contact to another position.
4. To complete the changes, tap .

Settings

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include up to 5 phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Sorting contacts in the phone book

1. Tap > *Sort by:* in the **Phone** application.
2. Select the required sorting option.

Advanced setting

Updating phone contacts

When the phone reconnects with the Infotainment system, the list is automatically updated.

› For manual update of the list tap > *Import contacts* in the **Phone** application.

Phone conversation

Overview

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call
- Rejecting an incoming call by a text message
- Receiving an incoming call
- Holding a call
- Returning to a call on hold
- Switching the ringer off
- Switching the ringer on
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Displaying caller details
- Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone

The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

Displaying the keypad to dial a number

Displaying the list of contacts

› To switch the call voice from the speakers to the phone, tap .

› To switch the call from the phone to the speakers, tap .

Operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** application, tap .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.
3. To dial, tap .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the feature is activated and you reject a call, you can send an SMS message to the caller.

› In the **Phone** application, tap > *Reject call with text message template*.

Turning voice call quality on/off in HD

This feature allows you to improve the quality of your phone call.

› In the **Phone** application, tap > *HD voice quality*.

Advanced setting

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To set the Infotainment system ringtone, tap in the **Phone** application > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Conference call

Overview

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of 3 and a maximum of 6 participants.

1. Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

   Or:

   During a call/conference in progress, accept a new incoming call by tapping .
2. To start a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference continues in the background)

Return to the held conference call

Switching the microphone off

Switching the microphone on

End conference call

Show details of the conference call

Operation

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

Show details of the conference call participants

End conversation with the conference call participant

Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the feature is activated and you reject a call, you can send an SMS message to the caller.

› In the **Phone** menu, tap > *Reject call with text message template*.

SMS

Operation

Sending a text message

1. In the **Phone** application, tap .

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap and select SMS at the top left of the screen.
2. Press the field at the bottom of the screen to write a new message.
3. Write and confirm a text message.

   If you tap the text area, you can edit the message.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the message.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

› In the **Phone** application, tap .

Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap ⌄ and select SMS at the top left of the screen.

Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation depending on the settings in the **Phone** application in ⚙ › *Show text messages as a conversation*.

If received messages are displayed individually:

1. Tap the message to have the voice assistant read the email and display the message menu.

   Or:

   To view the message menu without the voice assistant reading the email, swipe from right to left on the message.
2. Tap ✉ in the message menu.

If received messages are shown as a conversation:

› Tap a conversation to view it.

› To read a message with the voice assistant, tap the desired message in the conversation.

› To view an individual message, hold the desired message in the conversation.

You can choose the following functions in the displayed message or conversation:

- Forwarding a message
- ⋮ Message or conversation options
- View a list of quick replies
  Tap a quick reply to send it immediately.

You can reply to an email by pressing the reply box.

ⓘ In the displayed conversation, the functions apply to the last message in the conversation.

Settings

Turning on/off showing text messages as a conversation

When this feature is activated, text messages are shown as a conversation.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ › *Show text messages as a conversation*.

Switching on/off graphical notification when receiving a new message

If the feature is active, a new message symbol will appear on the **Phone** application icon and on the message button when a new message is received.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ › *Notification of new messages*.

Email

Operation

Sending an email

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ✉.

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap ⌄ and select the desired email account at the top left of the screen.
2. Press the field at the bottom of the screen to write a new message.
3. Enter the subject of the message.
4. Write and confirm an email.
5. Search for or select the recipient of the email.

   Several recipients can be included.
6. Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ✉.

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap ⌄ and select the desired email account at the top left of the screen.
2. Tap the email to have the voice assistant read the email and display the email menu.

   Or:

   To view the email menu without the voice assistant reading the email, swipe from right to left on the email.
3. In the e-mail menu, tap ✉.

You can select the following features in the email displayed:

- Forwarding email
- ⋮ Manage email
- ⌄ Reply to all or only to sender

You can reply to an email by pressing the reply box.

If the 📎 symbol is displayed, the email contains an attachment.

Settings

Switching on/off graphical notification when receiving a new e-mail

If the feature is active, a new message symbol will appear on the **Phone** application icon and on the message button when a new message is received.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ › *Notification of new messages*.

Mailbox

Operation

Connecting to the voicemail number

› Tap ⠿ > ⏀ in the **Phone** application.

1 If no voicemail number is entered, you will be prompted to enter one.

Settings

Setting up the voicemail number

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ > *Voicemail number:*.
2. Enter the voicemail number.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi use

Functionality

You can use the Wi-Fi to connect to the Internet or for SmartLink connections.

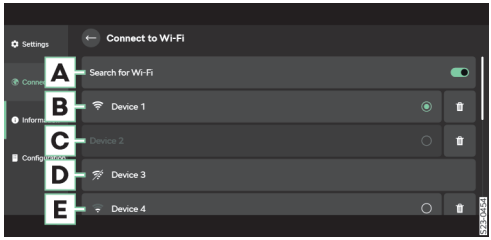
You can connect up to 8 mobile devices to the Infotainment system hotspot, and at the same time the Infotainment system can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview

List of available hotspots

› To display the list, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



- **A** Searching for available visible hotspots
- **B** Currently connected hotspot with maximum signal
- **C** Unavailable, previously connected hotspot
- **D** Available hotspot with insufficient security
- **E** Available, previously connected hotspot with weaker signal
- Currently connected hotspots
- Deleting the connection information of a hotspot
- Hotspot signal strength
- Insufficient security of the hotspot

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with secure access and WPA2/WPA3 encryption.

Wi-Fi connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment system Wi-Fi hotspot in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment Wi-Fi from the list of available Wi-Fi devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment system hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device Wi-Fi hotspot

1. Switch on the Wi-Fi unit of the Infotainment system in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Search for Wi-Fi*.
2. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available hotspots.
3. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

The Infotainment system remembers the passwords of previously connected hotspots.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters. It must also contain at least 1 lower case letter, an upper case letter, and a number.

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.

2. Enter and confirm the password.

Data transfer with a connected device

› To switch on/off data transfer with the connected device, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > .

Advanced setting

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Fast connection using a QR code

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Self-help

Tips for a seamless connection

› Leave only the hotspot being connected switched on and turn off the other hotspots.

› Delete unused hotspots. This will reduce the time required to establish a connection.

› Some hotspots take longer to connect, so wait until the connection is complete.

› If you break the connection, search for available hotspots again and repeat the connecting process.

SmartLink

Using the SmartLink function

Functionality

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Certification may depend on the use of the most up-to-date SmartLink application.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay

Overview

Displaying the SmartLink application

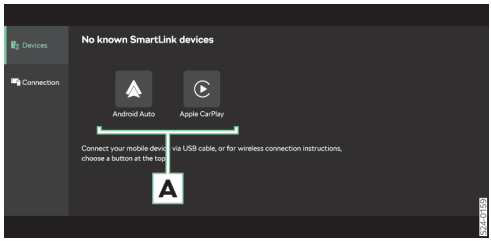
› Tap ⁘ > ▞.

Or:

› Tap ▞ in the preferred applications.

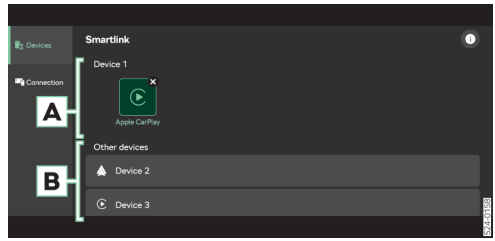
ⓘ When the device is connected in the SmartLink mode, the icon of the SmartLink application changes to ▲ or ▶, depending on the type of connection.

Menu for no connected devices



A List of supported connection types

Menu for the device in use, or the last connected device



A Currently used or last connected known device and the supported type of SmartLink connection

B Other connected devices

⊗ Terminating the connection

Conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink type connectivity of Android Auto or Apple CarPlay
✓ The mobile device and SmartLink connectivity type are supported in the relevant country.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications when driving

For safety reasons, some SmartLink applications cannot be operated while driving or are restricted in their use.

Settings

Switching to another device

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices.

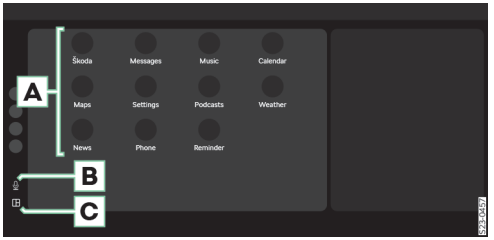
› In the SmartLink application, select the desired device.

Android Auto

Overview

Displaying Android Auto menu

› In the SmartLink application, select the device with the ▲ symbol from the list.



A List of available applications

B Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

C Returning to the Android Auto menu

Conditions

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.

✓ The mobile device and Android Auto connectivity are supported in the relevant country.

✓ The Android Auto application is installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Navigation function restriction

If you are navigating using the Infotainment system, starting navigation in the Android Auto application will stop the Infotainment system navigation.

If you are navigating using the Android Auto, starting navigation in the Infotainment system will stop navigation in this application.

Settings

USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. In the SmartLink application, select connection via Android Auto.

Connection of unpaired mobile device via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap in the Infotainment system SmartLink application.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the Bluetooth® “handsfree” profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. From the list of known devices, select the device with the ▲ symbol.

Connection of a paired mobile device via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. In the SmartLink application, select the device with the ▲ symbol from the list.

   Or:

   In SmartLink application, tap and select the device with the ▲ symbol.
3. If 2 other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.
✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Terminating the connection

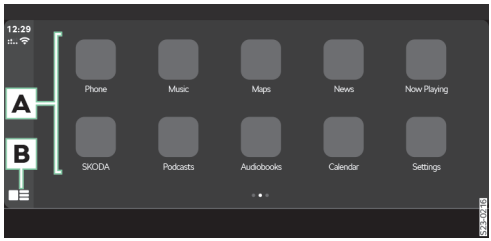
1. Tap “Škoda” in the Android Auto menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Apple CarPlay

Overview

Displaying Apple CarPlay menu

› In the SmartLink application, select the device with the ▶ symbol from the list.



A List of available applications
B Depending on the length of operation:
› **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

Conditions

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports Apple CarPlay connectivity.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connectivity can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ The mobile device and Apple CarPlay connectivity are supported in the relevant country.
✓ Siri voice control is activated.
✓ The data connection on the mobile device is switched on.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Tap in SmartLink application.
3. Look for the desired device with the ▶ symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ No other mobile device is connected via SmartLink.
✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

   The Infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® Infotainment device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Terminating the connection

1. Tap “Škoda” in the Apple CarPlay menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Navigation

Map

Overview

Displaying the Navigation application

› Tap ⁘ > ➤.

Or:

› Tap ➤ in the preferred applications.

Map overview

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🗺.



A The following navigation instruction
Tapping: repeating the last voice navigation instruction

B Traffic signs for the route section

C **Tapping:** changing map orientation
› 2D north-facing map
› 2D map oriented by direction of travel
› 3D map oriented by direction of travel

D Route

E **Pressing and dragging to the left:** displaying the route overview

F POI symbol
Tapping: displaying the details of the destination

G Vehicle location
Tapping: displaying the details of the vehicle location

H Route preview

STOP Exit navigation

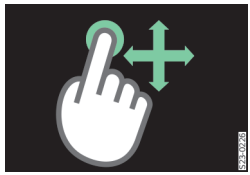
Map centred on vehicle position

Displaying the destinations menu

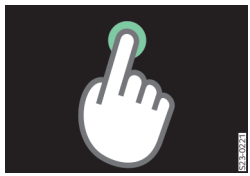
Displaying menu for setting the map view

Displaying the route and alternative routes

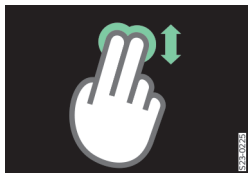
Operation



› Scrolling the map



› Tapping a point on the map to enter a destination



› Changing the map view 2D/3D



› Zooming in on the map



› Zooming out of the map



› Rotating the map

You can zoom in/out on the map using the middle multifunction control (Smart Dials) » page 86.

Settings

Choice of map colour scheme

You can view the map in 2 different colour schemes for driving in the light or in the dark.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Colour scheme*.
› *Automatic* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
› *Day* – map in day mode
› *Night* – map in night mode

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Basic functions* › *Define preferred POI categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Updating the navigation database

Automatic update

Maps are automatically updated online, if you have bought Infotainment Online » page 122 service.

Manual update

For information on available updates, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following Škoda website.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Finding the version of the navigation database

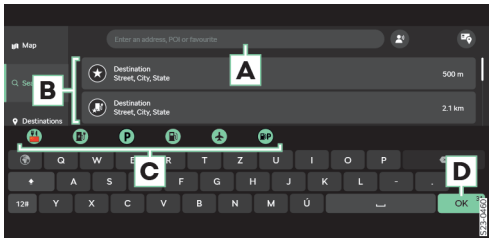
› Tap 🚗 › ⚙ › ⓘ › *System Information*.

Finding a destination

Overview

Finding a destination

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap 🔍 › 🔍.



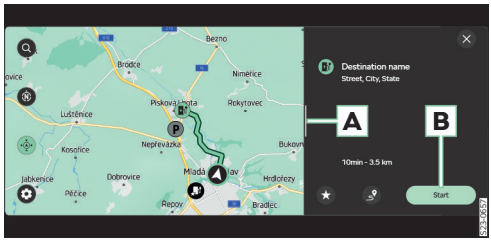
A Input line
B Preferred destinations
C Categories of specific destinations
› **Tap:** search by the category selected
D Displaying the list of searched entries
Setting the destination by entering the address

Destination details

The window with details include a map, available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

› After finding or selecting a destination in the 🔍 menu.
› After you tap the destination in the route overview
› After you tap a point or a POI symbol on the map



A **Tapping and dragging to the left:** enlarging the window with destination details
Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:
› *Demo* – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode
› *Rename* – renaming the saved destination
› *Call* – dialling the phone number of a POI
› *Edit* – an option to edit the home or work address
› *Continue* – adding a destination to the route
› *Stop* – stopping navigating to the destination

B Starting navigating to the destination
› ★ – saving the destination as a preferred destination or charging station

› – displaying the route and alternative routes

Operation

Selecting a search target

1. Enter the data to search for a target.
2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Setting the destination by entering the address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > > .

   The menu for entering a destination by address is displayed.
2. Enter the required details.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Continue*.

Entering a destination using GPS coordinates

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > > > *Enter latitude and longitude*.

   The menu for entering a destination by GPS coordinates is displayed.
2. Enter the desired GPS coordinates including the latitude and longitude.
3. Tap *Map*.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Continue*.

Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Settings

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

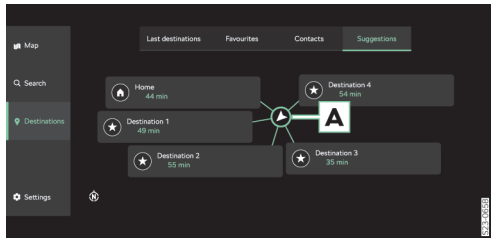
1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Predictive destinations

Overview

Suggested destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap > > *Suggested*.



A Vehicle position oriented north

Home address destination

Work address destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Work address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Operation

Deleting a suggested destination

1. Tap the button for the suggested destination and swipe left.
2. Tap .

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.

Settings

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by the Infotainment system depending on the frequency of trips and the time of day you drive to the destination.

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage pattern*.

Recent destinations

Overview

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Recent destinations*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting the last destination

1. Tap the button for the last destination and swipe left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Favourite destinations

Overview

List of favourite destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Favourites*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting a favourite destination

1. Tap the button for the favourite destination and swipe left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Renaming a favourite destination

1. Tap the button for the favourite destination and swipe left.
2. Tap ✎.

Settings

Setting the home address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Favourites* > *Home*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Suggestions* > 🏠.

Setting the work address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Favourites* > *Work*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

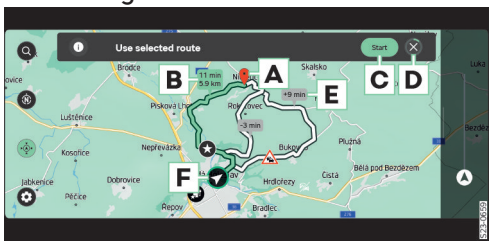
The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Suggestions* > 💼.

Route guidance

Overview

Calculating routes



A Destination location

B Suggested fastest route

C Starting navigation

D 15 seconds countdown before automatic start of navigation

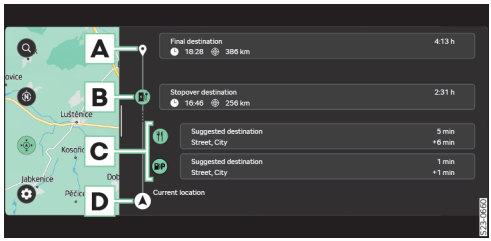
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown

E Alternative route

F Current vehicle position

ⓘ Displaying the selected route information

Route overview



A Final destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Stop route guidance*

B Inserted destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Delete*

C Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Add stopover*

D Information on the current vehicle position

Traffic density overview

If the Škoda Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the route overview:

Low density — — — High density

— Traffic density information is not available

Changing the route destinations

In the route overview, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the line is unlocked.
2. Drag the line to the desired position

   The route will be recalculated.

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Turning voice navigation instructions on/off

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Navigation announcements*.

Repeating the last voice navigation instruction

› Tap the navigation instruction displayed on the screen with map in **Navigation** application.

Restrictions

The Infotainment system may issue incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or traffic conditions do not match the navigation data. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

The navigation data can be updated ***» page 110***.

Settings

Setting navigation instructions

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. In *Navigation announcements* tap >.
3. Select and set the desired item.

Setting the route parameters

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Route options*.
2. Select and set the desired item.

Switching fuel shortage warning on/off

If the function is switched on and the fuel supply drops into the reserve area, a warning message will be displayed with the option to locate the nearest petrol station.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Bypassing a traffic obstruction

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment system receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from the online traffic news, the route will be recalculated.

Based on the following settings, the Infotainment system may suggest to avoid a traffic congestion:

1. In the **Navigation** menu, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Avoid traffic congestion*.
2. Select the desired item.

Advanced setting

Switching the display of signs on motorways and express ways on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs and signals on motorways and expressways.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Info signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the country speed limit display on/off.

If the function is switched on, the speed limits of the country are displayed when you cross the border.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Demo mode

Use

In Demo mode, navigation from the starting point of Demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

If the function is on, the Infotainment system asks before starting navigation whether to navigate normally or in Demomode.

Settings

Switching Demo mode on/off

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Defining Demo mode starting point

1. Switch on the Demo mode
2. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
3. Search for the desired destination to be the Demomode starting point.

Or:

1. Switch on the Demo mode
2. Select or search for the desired destination to be the Demo mode starting point.

   The details of the destination will be displayed.
3. Enlarge the destination details window by dragging the bar on the left edge of the window.
4. Tap *Demo*.

Online services

Škoda Connect

Regulations

Rights and obligations of the parties arising from the provision of these services are regulated in a separate contractual arrangement. Current legal documents relating to Škoda Connect services can be found in MyŠkoda application.

Functionality

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect services are not included in the vehicle equipment. They are ordered separately in the MyŠkoda application.

The range of Škoda Connect services depends on the type and equipment of the vehicle, on the Infotainment system and the country.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, or a link to downloading MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

Conditions

Škoda Connect services – conditions of use

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The registered user is authorised to use Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The set level of protection for sending personal data enables the use of Škoda Connect services.

Availability of Škoda Connect services

Availability is based on the following conditions:

- Mobile networks providing connection to Škoda Connect services are available.
  - Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
  - In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- Škoda Connect services are available for your vehicle, for the Infotainment system and for the country.
  - You can check availability on the following Škoda Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of Škoda Connect services

The availability status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

- **White** – Škoda Connect services are available.
- **Grey** – Škoda Connect services are not available.

Restrictions

Škoda Connect services may be limited or interrupted in the following cases:

- During maintenance, deactivation, software updates, or restrictions with mobile network providers.
- Failure or insufficient reception of the GPS or mobile network signal, e.g. at high speed.
- If you are in locations with poor or no signal, e.g. underground garages, tunnels, mountain valleys.
- In case of limited availability, incomplete or incorrect information from third party providers, e.g. map display.

MyŠkoda application

Functionality

MyŠkoda application

The MyŠkoda website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, or remote access to the vehicle.

You can download the application to your mobile device by loading the following the QR code or the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda

Conditions

- ✓ The user has the Škoda ID account paired with the vehicle.
- ✓ The Škoda Connect services in the vehicle are active.

Data connection via the data package for eSIM in the vehicle

Use

You need a data connection in the vehicle to use all online services.

Ways of creating a data connection

› By connecting the Infotainment system to an external hotspot with internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

› Via a data package for **eSIM** in the car.

ⓘ For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Restrictions

› In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.

› Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.

› Škoda Auto accepts no liability for changes in the mobile network over time, e.g. generational replacement of outdated technology.

Settings

Turning on/off the data connection to create a hotspot in the car

You can use a prepaid data connection to create a hotspot in the car.

The data connection can be shared by up to 8 connected devices via Wi-Fi.

› On the Infotainment system screen, tap > > *Connection* > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

Data package usage overview

You can purchase data packages on the following web site in data connection overview of your user account and view the current status of the already purchased packages:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Škoda Connect services user registration and activation

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a Škoda ID user account that you can use in all Škoda applications and services.

You can register as a Škoda Connect user in MyŠkoda application.

› Follow the instructions in MyŠkoda application to register.

ⓘ When registering, you will create an S-PIN.
The S-PIN is used to authorise requirements within some Škoda Connect services and to log in to your protected user account.

Settings

activation of Škoda Connect services

The services are activated by the login of the main user.

ⓘ After the main user is activated, the mode is switched off.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions.

The current privacy statement on protecting personal data can be found on this website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a party to the use of Škoda Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information about the last parking position, notifications about leaving an area or speeding notifications.

If the passenger does not agree to the use of location services, turn off the services by setting the appropriate privacy level.

Functionality

When using Škoda Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

The transmission is influenced by personal data protection settings.

The personal data protection settings affects the transmission of data via eSIM.

It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via Wi-Fi.

Settings

Legally required services, such as emergency calls, cannot be switched off.

Each vehicle user can set the level of personal data protection

The level of personal data protection is linked to the User Account and is set according to the last set level when the user logs in.

Settings in user management

1. Tap > > > *Privacy settings and services* in the Infotainment system.
2. Setting required personal data protection level.

- All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.
- All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.
- No online updates are available.

- All Škoda Connect localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
- All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

- Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is not provided to others.
- Vehicle location information is not available in My Škoda application.
- Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
- All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

- Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location to function.
- Vehicle location information is available in MyŠkoda application.
- Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
- All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymous data

With the personal data protection level set to and , the vehicle can collect and transmit undisclosed data to improve the services of selected third parties.

These are exclusively undisclosed data without any link to a specific vehicle, its owner or other authorised user.

To use all Škoda Connect services, you must activate the mode.

User management

What you should be mindful of

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user. The previous owner may still be able to control the

vehicle's functions and obtain information about users and the vehicle.

It is therefore recommended that you delete the account of the previous main user by resetting it to factory settings. Then log in with your own user account and set yourself as the primary user of the vehicle.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User management displays a list of logged-in users in the car. In user management, you can do the following:

› Select a user account
› Add and remove user accounts
› Set the security of the account

Overview

The primary user

The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated Škoda Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The primary user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The primary user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The primary user has access to remote vehicle functions.

All settings are stored in the primary user's personal online account.

User with online Škoda Connect account

The user is not the primary user, but has their own online Škoda Connect account.

The user can make full use of the personalisation function.

All settings are stored in the logged-in user's personal online account.

Guest

The guest account is anonymous and does not synchronise with Škoda Connect services in any way.

All changes to the settings associated with this account remain stored in the vehicle only.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Conditions

In order to enjoy unlimited use of user account management and synchronisation with online accounts, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

User logging in

When the ignition and the Infotainment system are switched on, the initial login screen for the last user account used will be displayed.

› Confirm the logging in.

If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. Select the desired account.
3. If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

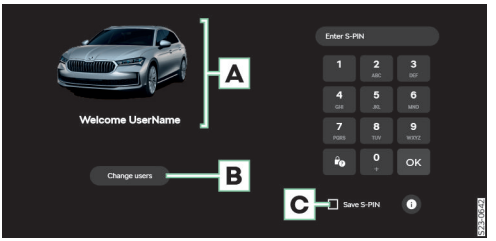
Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. If you are a new user, tap + to log in.
3. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Logging in to a protected user account

Some user accounts may be protected. Protected accounts are marked with the symbol 🔒 in the user list.

To log in to a protected user account, it is required to enter S-PIN that you created when opening your user account in MyŠkoda application.



A User name
B Displaying user account management
C Switching off login to your account using the S-PIN
Displaying information to restore the S-PIN
Displaying information on the S-PIN

ⓘ Verifying the user by setting the S-PIN can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system under > > > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN*.

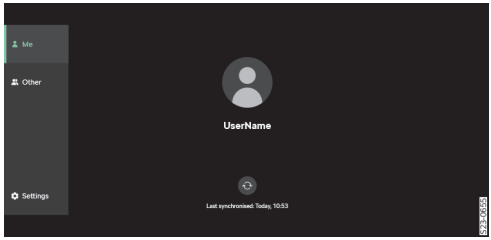
Restoring S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored in MyŠkoda application.

Settings

Managing the current user

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.



Details of the currently selected user

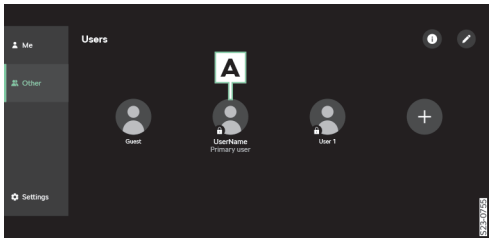
Switching to another user / Logging in a new user

Settings

Online account synchronisation

User management

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.



A Logged in main user of the vehicle

\+ Adding a new user

User account protected by an S-PIN.

Displaying edit mode

Deleting a user

1. Tap > > > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting the current user account

1. In the Infotainment system, tap > > > *Delete active user*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting primary user account from the user management

› Tap > > > > *Delete* on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Tap > > > *Become primary user* > *Delete primary user* > *Delete* in the Infotainment system.

Deleting primary user account and logging out the user in the car

› Tap > > > > > *Return* in the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Tap > > > *Become primary user* > *Delete primary user* > *Return*.

Deleting all users

Restoring the Infotainment system factory settings deletes all user accounts.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap > on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the user accounts and delete the primary user account.

Personalisation

Use

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the car's personalised functions to an active Škoda ID user account. Every change to the function settings is automatically saved when the ignition is switched off if the car is within the range of the contractual mobile network.

By logging in to the user account in another Škoda vehicle, the customisable functions associated with the user account are synchronised depending on the vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Over-the-Air update

Use

Over-the-Air update allows you to update the car's software without the need for a service visit.

For more information on Over-the-Air update, please visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

Operation

Installing the update

Once the update is available, the option to start the update will appear on the Infotainment system log-out screen after the ignition is switched off

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Tap *Update available* on the Infotainment system screen.

   For more information about the content of the update, tap the *Further information* button.
4. Tap the *Install* button.
5. Leave the car and lock it.
6. After returning to the car, turn on the ignition and check the result of the update on the Infotainment system screen.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency calls may not be available during installation.

› Install the update when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- ✓ Ignition is switched off.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ is not set in the vehicle.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Troubleshooting

If you experience any of the following conditions after an update, contact a professional garage:

› The Infotainment system display shows a message about an incorrect update installation.

› The Infotainment system display is still switched off after switching on.

› A message about an incomplete update is displayed in the digital instrument cluster.

Application updates

Operation

If an application update is available, the Infotainment screen will give you the option to start the update immediately or postpone it.

ⓘ You can also start the update while driving.

Starting a postponed update

1. Tap > .

   Or:

   Tap the item for available application updates in the list of notifications.
2. To display information about the update, press the name of the update.

   To start the update, tap *Install now*.

Settings

Turning automatic application updates on/off

When enabled, the update will automatically start as soon as it is available. This feature is enabled by default.

› Tap > > > *Setting* > *Run updates for apps automatically*.

ⓘ The function automatically updates system apps and apps from the Shop menu ***» page 120***.

Shop

Use

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

› Order new features and services

› Renew purchased features and services

Data packages

Data packages can also be used by devices connected via Wi-Fi.

For more information on Škoda Connect services, on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the Škoda Connect Shop website.

https://shop.skoda-connect.com

Overview

1. Tap > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired function or service from the displayed list.

Conditions

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of Škoda Connect services.

Restrictions

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information calls

Use

You can use the information call in case of problems with Škoda Connect services or to obtain information about Škoda products and services.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to .

Operation



› Press the button.

Tap the button to contact the local hotline.

Breakdown call

Use

Breakdown call can be used in case of the vehicle breakdown.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to .

Operation



› Press the button.

Tap the button to contact the Škoda assist service. The vehicle also sends information about the status and position of the vehicle.

Planning a service visit

Use

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ In MyŠkoda application, a Škoda Service Partner has been selected.
- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The privacy level is not set to .
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Vehicle health card

Use

The vehicle's health card function allows you to monitor the status of your vehicle online.

The service is available in the MyŠkoda application.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.

- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Škoda Connect services

Overview

Remote access

The service provides access to, for example, the following vehicle functions and information:

- › Unlocking and locking
- › Last parking position
- › Vehicle status

Infotainment Online

The service can be used to extend the navigation in the Infotainment system with, for example, the following functions:

- › Online destination import
- › Online traffic information
- › Online map updates

On-demand functions

The service allows you to extend the vehicle's equipment with additional features, which can be purchased through the Škoda Connect Shop.

The functions may be time-limited or permanent.

For on-demand features information, see:

- › Škoda Connect Shop » *page 120*
- › MyŠkoda application » *page 116*
- › Information line » *page 121*
- › The Škoda Connect website » *page 115*

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Starting

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

✓ Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on/off



› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Move the selector lever to the **P** or **N** position.
4. Press the starter button.

ⓘ *Applies to mHEV vehicles.*
Starting is indicated as follows:

› An audible signal sounds.

› *READY* appears on the instrument cluster screen.

ⓘ In diesel vehicles, after the ignition is switched on, the message – glow plug. The engine will start when the sign goes out .

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below –10 °C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, e.g. when towing, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine

› Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
3. If the engine does not start, use the jump start leads with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle » *page 167*.

   Or:

   Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the screen shows a message about the immobiliser

1. Use the other vehicle key.
2. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key

 illuminated

1. Put the key on the key symbol in the cup holder in front.
2. Press the starter button.
3. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

› Hold the starter button or press it twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan may continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine stops. This is not a fault.

The engine makes noises after a cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a fault.

START-STOP

Use

The START-STOP decreases emissions of CO_2 and harmful emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determines that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is depressed and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is depressed. If Auto Hold is deactivated, the system will start the engine when the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

Some conditions are determined by the state of the car's systems and cannot be influenced or recognized. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions:

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was more than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

› Upon start-up of engine.

› By selecting the driving mode Eco *» page 126, Operation*.

Deactivating/activating the system

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Deactivate or activate the function in the displayed menu by pressing A OFF.

A OFF Illuminated – the function is activated

A OFF illuminated – the function is deactivated

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox modes

Selecting the automatic gearbox mode

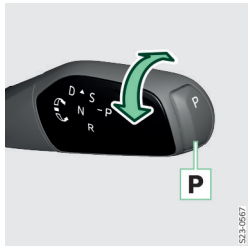
› To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector lever will then return to the default position.

› To select the **P** mode, press the P button.

ⓘ The selector lever can be moved forward or backward through two positions. This allows you, for example, to select the **D/S** mode directly from the **R** mode and vice versa.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



P **Parked vehicle**

The drive wheels are locked.

The **P** mode can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**

The **R** mode can be selected when the speed is lower than 10 km/h.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive/sports program**

In the **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in the **D** mode.

To select between **D** and **S**, move the selector lever forward.

ⓘ To select the **D**, **S** and **R** modes, you must first start the engine. You can only select the **N** mode with the engine off, the ignition on, the brake pedal depressed and the parking brake disengaged. Confirm the **N**

mode in the Infotainment system. This can be useful, for example, when towing the car or at the car wash.

Unlocking the automatic gearbox from the P mode

illuminated – automatic gearbox is in the **P** mode

› Depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the vehicle moving forwards without warning.

› If the selected mode is **D**, **S**, **R** or **N**, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Start the engine.
3. Select the required mode with the selector lever.
4. Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal

Maximum acceleration when driving (Kick-down)

› Depress the accelerator pedal fully.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode **D/S** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Select the **P** mode.
4. Turn off the engine.

ⓘ When the engine is switched off in the **D**, **S** or **R** mode, or the **P** mode is automatically selected.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that a gear does not need to be engaged while driving, it will automatically shift to idle.

ⓘ In vehicles with the mHEV drive, the engine can also be switched off at speeds of 10–160 km/h. A OFF will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral:
Applies to mHEV vehicles.

- ✓ The Eco driving mode is selected.
- ✓ **D** mode is selected.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is depressed.
- ✓ The driving speed is 20 – 130 km/h.

Requirements for driving in neutral:
Applies to mHEV vehicles.

- ✓ **D** mode is selected.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is depressed.
- ✓ The Sport driving mode is not selected.

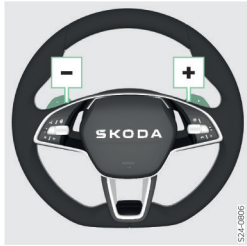
Maximum acceleration during starting (Launch-control)

This function allows maximum acceleration during launching.

1. Select the **S** mode or manual shift.
2. Deactivate ASR » *page 133*.
3. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal all the way down.
5. Release the brake pedal.

   The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



– Change down a gear
+ Change up a gear

› To **turn on**, press the – button, or +.
› To **turn off**, keep the + button pressed down, or select another mode.

ⓘ If you don't use one of the buttons for a certain period of time in the **D** mode, manual shifting is switched off automatically.
The manual shift does not turn off automatically when in **S** mode.

If there is a risk of over-revving

› The gearbox automatically changes up a gear.
› The gearbox prevents downshifting.

Troubleshooting

Gearbox overheated

Illuminates together with ⚠
Message indicating gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

Illuminates together with ⚠
Message indicating gearbox overheating

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
2. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.

3. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Gearbox malfunction

Illuminates together with ⚠
Message indicating gearbox in emergency mode

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Illuminates together with ⚠
Message indicating a gearbox malfunction

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Automatic gearbox is blocked

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Recovering a stranded vehicle

1. If possible, remove the obstacle, e.g. snow.
2. Put underneath the wheels of the driven axle e.g. rubber mats.
3. At low engine speed, move the selector lever smoothly between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will start to rock and be easier to free.

Driving modes

Use

Driving modes allow you to tailor the car's handling to your driving style.

Overview

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster, on the Infotainment system screen and on the multifunction control, to which the drive mode selection function must be assigned » *page 86*.

Eco mode

The ECO driving mode is suitable for a relaxed driving style and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

Comfort driving mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long journeys on the motorway.

Normal mode

The Normal driving mode is suitable for normal driving style.

Sport mode

The Sport driving mode is suitable for sport driving style.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows you to individually adjust some of the vehicle's systems.

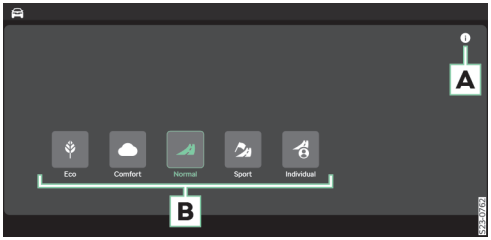
Operation

Selecting driving mode

1. Tap › on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired mode.

Or:

1. Assign the drive mode selection function to the centre multifunction control (Smart Dials).
2. Turn the centre multifunction control (Smart Dials) to select from the drive mode menu. Confirm the selection by holding the selected mode.



A Information on the currently selected mode

B Driving modes menu

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive chassis fault DCC

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Overview

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Follow the gear changing recommendation on the instrument cluster screen.
› Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
› Do not allow the engine to idle for long periods.
› Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » *page 178*.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.

› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

A more fuel-efficient driving status

In the following situations, fuel consumption is slightly reduced.

› Active cylinder management has temporarily deactivated some engine cylinders (applies to some engine types).
› A vehicle with an automatic gearbox idles.

Driving with a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution!

ⓘ NOTICE

Frequent trips with a trailer impose excessive loads on the vehicle.

› Have the vehicle checked between service inspections.

Recommendations for driving with a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure of the vehicle for full load operation.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights of the vehicle and the combination as stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (e.g. vehicle registration document, COC document) and on the type plate.
› When driving with a trailer, the actual load of the vehicle and the load distribution in the trailer must be taken into account. A trailer attachment increases the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle and may reduce the weight of the payload.
› Adjust the headlight inclination to match the load on the vehicle. The front of the vehicle with the trailer attached may lift and the lights may dazzle other road users.
› Do not exceed the speed of **100 km/h**.
› If the trailer swerves sideways, reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal. Do not attempt to straighten the vehicle combination by accelerating.
› If you do not have a clear view of the traffic behind the trailer, have additional rear-view mirrors fitted.
› Brake in time. First lightly brake the trailer with the trailer brake, then steadily increase the pressure on the brake pedal. This will eliminate impacts caused by locked trailer wheels when braking.
› Before descending, down shift to take advantage of the engine's braking power.

Load distribution in the vehicle combination

› Secure heavy objects against shifting, preferably close to the trailer axle.
› Carry small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Permissible unbraked trailer weight (kg)	
	Superb	Superb Combi
1.5 l/ 110 kW TSI mHEV	750	750
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	750	750
2.0 l/150 kW TSI	750	750
2.0 l/195 kW TSI	750	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	750	750
2.0 l/142 kW TDI CR	750	750

Engine type	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a]	
	Superb	Superb Combi
1.5 l/ 110 kW TSI mHEV	1600	1600
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	1800	1800
2.0 l/150 kW TSI	1800	1800
2.0 l/195 kW TSI	2200	2200
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	2000	2000
2.0 l/142 kW TDI CR	2200	2200
[a] On gradients up to 12 %.		

Tow eye and towing

Conditions for towing

✓ Technical condition of the vehicle allows towing.
✓ Ignition is on.
✓ Select the **N** automatic gearbox mode.

Restrictions

› Towing speed up to 50 km/h
› Towing distance up to 50 km

Towing eye

Removing the front cap



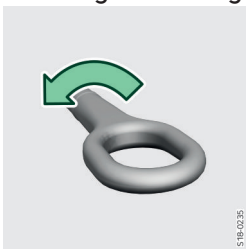
1. Push on the cap.
2. Remove the cap.

Removing the rear cap



1. Push on the cap.
2. Remove the cap.

Installing the towing eye



1. Screw in the towing eye.
2. Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
3. Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

⚠ WARNING

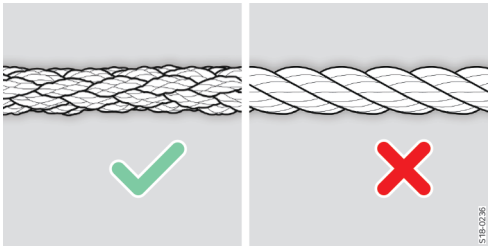
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering are not operational. The steering lock may also engage.

› If the engine cannot be started,switch on the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.

› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



NOTICE

› Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

When towing a non-moving vehicle with a towing vehicle, please observe the following instructions:

› The vehicle must not be towed with the front axle raised while the ignition is on.

› A car with an automatic transmission must not be towed with the rear axle raised.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

If there is no oil in the transmission of a non-moving vehicle, transport the vehicle in one of the following ways:

› On a tow truck.

› Towing with the front axle raised, with the ignition switched off.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› On the front towing eye

› On the rear towing eye

› On the tow bar fitted from the factory

Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

1. Drive slowly and smoothly.
2. Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Switch on the ignition or start the engine if the technical condition of the car allows it.
3. Select the **N** automatic gearbox mode.
4. Switch off the parking brake.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Risk of the brakes overheating!

› Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.

› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Engine off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, do not continue.
2. Do not refill.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low brake fluid is indicated by the instrument cluster illuminating (!). However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the **MIN** mark, there may be a leak in the brake system.

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. This standard meets the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Replacing

› Have the brake fluid changed by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the brake fluid replacement interval is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

(!) illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

(!) illuminates together with (ABS)

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

(!) illuminates together with (ABS)

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

ⓘ Prolonged parking and low brake loads contribute to corrosion on the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads.

The brake booster does not work when the engine is off

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electrical parking brake

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Switch lock hazard!

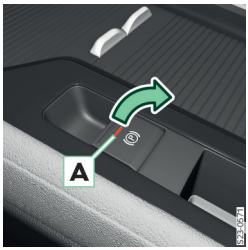
The finger recess in front of the switch (P) must remain empty.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› If the vehicle needs to move freely, in the car wash for example, make sure the parking brake is off.

Manual activation



› Pull the switch Ⓟ and hold it.

The indicator light A in the switch and Ⓟ on the instrument cluster illuminates.

⚠ WARNING

› Always check that the parking brake is on before leaving the car.

Automatic deactivation

The parking brake is automatically switched off when you drive off.

If you want to prevent it from switching off automatically, e.g. when starting uphill, hold the Ⓟ button down.

Conditions for automatic deactivation

✓ The driver's door is closed, in some cases the driver's seat belt must also be fastened

Switching off manually



› With the ignition switched on, depress the brake pedal and simultaneously press the Ⓟ switch.

Deactivating the parking brake before leaving the vehicle

If it is necessary to allow the vehicle to move freely after you leave it, proceed as follows:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes* > *Deactivate now*.
4. Depress the brake pedal and select the mode **N** of the automatic gearbox.
5. Get out of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake fault

(!) illuminated
Message indicating a parking brake fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashing
Message about parking on a slope that is too steep.

› Move to a parking space with less slope.

When the parking brake is applied, noise is generated

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a fault.

The 12V vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the 12V vehicle battery to a power source such as another car's 12V vehicle battery.

Emergency braking in the event of a brake system failure

Switching on



› Pull the Ⓟ switch and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **strongly** and an acoustic signal sounds.

Switching off

› Release the Ⓟ switch.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic securing of the car

Use

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle against movement when it stops.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Auto Hold cannot hold a vehicle stationary on a slope in all circumstances, e.g. on a slippery surface.

Securing and unlocking the vehicle

When the vehicle **stops,** Auto Holdautomatically **secures** it. AUTO HOLD will be illuminated in the instrument cluster. You can release the brake pedal.

When the vehicle **starts,** Auto Hold automatically **unlocks** it.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

AUTO HOLD Illuminated – Auto Hold is activated and prepared to intervene

AUTO HOLD illuminated – Auto Hold secures the vehicle against movement

Automatic securing the vehicle with the parking brake

In some cases, the parking brake can take over the securing of the vehicle. Ⓟ will be illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The engine is running or stopped by the START-STOP system.
- ✓ Auto Hold is activated.
- ✓ Automatic gearbox mode **N** is not selected.

Settings

Activation and deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Auto Hold* item and activate or deactivate the feature.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Deactivate Auto Hold before entering a car wash where free movement of the vehicle is required.

48V battery

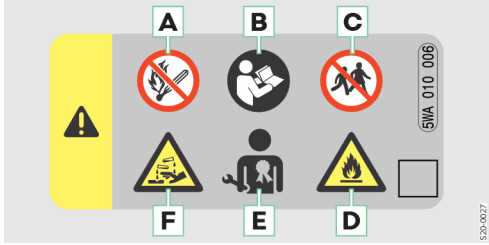
Use

Depending on vehicle equipment, a 48V battery may be included.

The 48V battery stores the electrical energy generated during regenerative braking.,

The stored electrical energy is then used to start the engine, to provide short-term acceleration assistance and to power the vehicle's appliances.

What you should be mindful of



Warning label on the battery

- **A** Do not expose the battery to fire, sparks or open flame.
- **B** For more information, refer to the Owner's Manual.
- **C** Keep children away from the battery.
- **D** Take care when handling flammable or combustible substances.
- **E** Have qualified service technicians perform work on the battery.
- **F** Avoid contact with leaking liquids if the battery is damaged.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not carry out any work on the battery.
› Only qualified service technicians may work on the battery.
› The battery must not come into contact with any liquids.

Overview

The 48V system and the battery in the vehicle includes the following components:

› Battery
› Power electronics
› Purple cables and connectors

Troubleshooting

48V vehicle network fault

illuminated
48V vehicle network fault message on the instrument cluster screen.

1. Start the engine, but do not start the vehicle.
2. Keep the vehicle stationary for several minutes until the warning light goes out.
3. If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated
48V vehicle network fault message on the instrument cluster screen.

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine and ignition.
3. Restart the engine, but do not start the vehicle.
4. If the warning indicator light turns **red** after starting the engine, switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

   Or:

   If the warning indicator light turns **yellow** after starting the engine,proceed as follows:
5. Keep the vehicle stationary for several minutes until the warning light goes out.
6. If the yellow warning light does not go out even after several minutes, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Electric drive system fault



illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster screen about an electrical system fault

1. Do not attempt to pull-start the vehicle.
2. If the engine does not start, use the jump start leads with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle » *page 167* or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)
ESC helps stabilise the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC is engaged

ESC Sport
ESC Sport enables a more sporty driving style.

 Illuminated – activated ESC Sport

Traction control (ASR)
ASR helps stabilise the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when they start spinning.

 flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)
ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is signalled by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels on the driven axle lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the engine braking effect and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)
EDS helps stabilise the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with varying grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes the spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)
XDS+ helps keep the vehicle turning by effectively braking the wheels on the inside of the turn.

Active steering assist (DSR)
DSR helps stabilise the vehicle in a limit situation by indicating to the driver where to turn the steering wheel by a pulse to the steering wheel.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)
The HHC system helps with hill starts by braking the vehicle for approximately 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The gradient is at least 5 %.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps decelerate and stabilise the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ Following a front, side and rear collision of a certain force.
- ✓ The speed at the time of impact exceeded 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)
TSA helps stabilize the trailer combination If the trailer combination starts to sway, the TSA stabilises it by braking individual wheels of the vehicle.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The towing bracket is supplied from the factory or purchased from the Škoda Genuine Equipment range.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the towing bracket socket.
- ✓ The ASR is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)
eBKV makes it easier to depress the brake pedal.

When the ignition is switched off, the eBKV function is limited or unavailable.

ⓘ If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR
1. On the Infotainment screen, tap > > > *Exterior*.

2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Deactivating ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

› Driving with snow chains
› Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
› Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Activation/deactivation of ESC Sport

1. On the Infotainment screen, tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When activated, in the instrument cluster illuminates.

When deactivated, the light goes out.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction, ESC or ASR switched off by the system

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ABS malfunction

illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

illuminates together with

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster fault

illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Malfunction of the all-wheel drive

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine, wait about 10 minutes and start again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle in front of you and warns you if you do not keep a safe distance. In an emergency situation, it helps to avoid a collision by braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – failure to keep a safe distance

illuminated – warning if there is a risk of collision

Automatic braking when there is a risk of collision

When there is a risk of collision, will illuminate as a warning. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

At speeds up to 30 km/h, the vehicle will start braking without warning.

Automatic braking can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.

The brake system pressure is increased during automatic braking. The brake pedal cannot be depressed within its normal range.

Conditions

✓ ASR is activated.
✓ The driving speed is over 5 km/h.

Restrictions

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Front Assist has a limited response to oncoming traffic.
If the vehicle is approaching an obstacle at a very high speed, the system's response may be delayed.

Limitation or unavailability of the function

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› Approximately 30 seconds after staring (indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated)

› When negotiating a steep curve
› During ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation and settings in the Infotainment system

In the › › › menu.

› *Active* – activation/deactivation of Front Assist
› *Display distance warning* – activating/deactivating the display of distance warning
› *Swerve support* – when activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by braking and assisting steering control.
› *Oncoming vehicle braking w. turning* – when activated, the system can apply the brakes at low speeds when turning to avoid collision with oncoming traffic.
› *Front Cross Traffic Assist* – when activated, the system can help avoid a side collision with a vehicle when crossing an intersection

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

OFF illuminated

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of Front Assist

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. Turn off the engine and start again.
4. If the Front Assist system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
5. If the brake lights are working and the Front Assist system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

There has been an unfounded warning or system intervention

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. If the system still does not work properly, deactivate the Front Assist system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection

Functionality

Pedestrian detection helps to avoid collisions with pedestrians moving across or along the road by automatic braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – danger of collision

Risk of collision at speeds between 5–30 km/h

The system automatically applies the brakes.

Risk of collision at speeds between 30–85 km/h

The system first warns of a collision risk. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

Conditions

✓ Front Assist is activated.
✓ The driving speed is 5 – 85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter regulates the maximum speed of the vehicle to a set speed limit.

Speed limiter with predictive control

The speed limiter with predictive control is an extension of the speed limiter system.

If the system detects a speed limit, a message will appear on the instrument cluster screen.

The system automatically sets the speed limit according to the detected speed limit, even if the speed limiter is deactivated.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

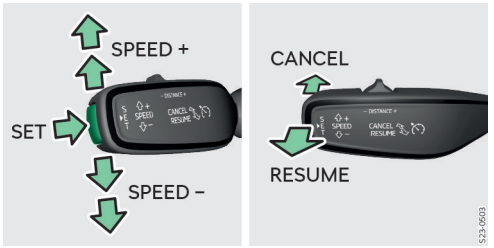
LIM Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

LIM illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed
flashing – the set limit is exceeded
When cruise control starts, the set speed limit is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.

Operation



To activate the speed limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and select the item for speed limiter on the instrument cluster.

RESUME Starting or restoring regulation[1)]

CANCEL Interrupting regulation

SPEED + Increasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SPEED – Decreasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SET Starting regulation

Switching between speed limiter, cruise control and ACC (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Interrupting cruise control

› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Restrictions

The function of the speed limiter with predictive control may be limited, e.g. in the following cases:

› Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.
› Traffic sign recognition is unavailable.
› GPS signal reception is insufficient.
› Weather conditions are unfavourable.

Settings

Activation/deactivation of speed limiter with predictive control

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system > > > .
2. Activate/deactivate speed limiter

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter fault

LIM illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

What you should be mindful of

Do not use CCS in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the need to depress the accelerator pedal.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – cruise control is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

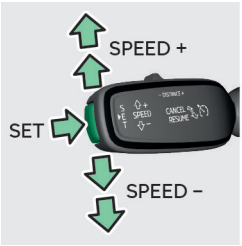
Conditions

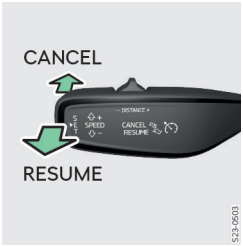
✓ The driving speed is over 20 km/h.

---

1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Operation





RESUME Starting or restoring regulation[1)]

CANCEL Interrupting regulation

SPEED + Increasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SPEED – Decreasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SET Starting regulation

Switching between cruise control, ACC and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system fault

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the cruise control system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
3. If the brake lights are working and the cruise control system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

What you should be mindful of

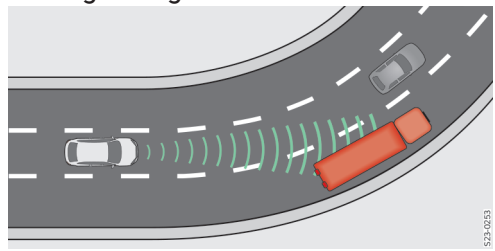
⚠ WARNING

› In the following situations, increase your attention and be prepared to intervene.

Regulating the speed according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

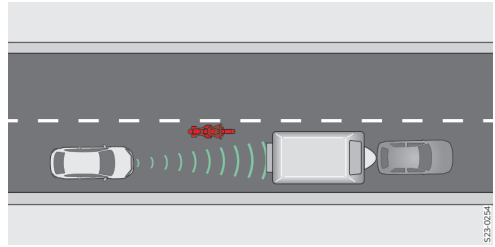
If your vehicle is travelling faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side at speeds above 80 km/h, your vehicle's speed may be regulated according to this vehicle.

Passing through a corner



A vehicle in the adjacent lane may enter the monitored area when going around a corner. Your vehicle's speed will be regulated according to this car.

Narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel

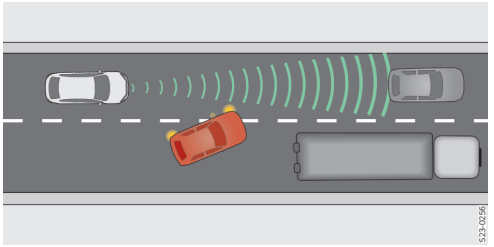


ACC will only detect a narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel in the adjacent lane when it enters the monitoring area.

---

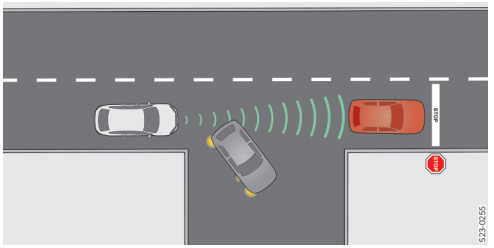
1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Other vehicles changing lanes



The ACC system may not be able to detect in time a vehicle that changes lanes just in front of you.

A stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front of you turns and another vehicle is in front of that vehicle, the ACC system **may not react** to this stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special loads or special extensions

Cargo or extensions that protrude outside the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC system.

Functionality

ACC speed control

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to any objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ⓘ ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC (Predictive adaptive cruise control)

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts the speed based on information obtained from the following sources:

- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range

ACC allows you to adjust the speed according to the car's equipment within a range of 20– 210 km/h.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic gearbox at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 20 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the car in front of you in 5 different levels.

⚠ WARNING

- Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.
- Always set a greater distance when visibility is reduced.

START-STOP system

The vehicle can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again.

The vehicle's readiness for automatic start is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster screen.

The auto-start readiness is time-limited and can be extended in one of the following ways:

- Put the selector lever to **RESUME**position
- Hold the steering wheel (applies to vehicles with hand detection on the steering wheel)

Manual start

- Depress the accelerator pedal
- Put the selector lever to **RESUME**position

⚠ WARNING

- Check the roadway and be prepared to brake before each start.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – ACC is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

- Depress the brake pedal.

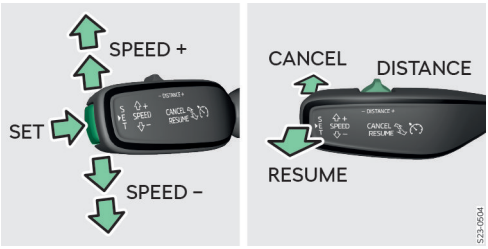
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation



RESUME Starting or restoring regulation[1)]

CANCEL Interrupting regulation

SPEED + Increasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SPEED – Decreasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

DISTANCE Setting the distance level

SET Starting regulation

Switching between ACC, cruise control and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Starting regulation

› Tap **SET**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

If the speed is not stored in memory, you can also start the current speed control by moving the lever to the **RESUME** position.

Resuming the control

› If the speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the **RESUME** position.

The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster screen.

Rejecting a speed limit or an approaching event

If the pACC displays an upcoming event or a speed other than the stored speed on the instrument cluster, you can reject it as follows:

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME** position.

The vehicle will be regulated at the previously set speed.

Or:

› Tap **SET**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

Immediate takeover of the speed limit

If the pACC displays higher speed than the stored speed on the instrument cluster screen, you can take it over immediately in the following way:

› Put the selector lever to **SPEED +** position.

The vehicle will accelerate to the newly set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› When the brake pedal is depressed while driving
› Put the selector lever to **CANCEL**position
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Setting the distance level

› Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The screen will show A line indicating change of distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Restrictions

Do not use the ACC system in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

---

1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

If the navigation map data is out of date, the pACC may react to speed limits that no longer exist and change the speed unexpectedly.

Settings

Activating/deactivating (depending on vehicle equipment)

On the Infotainment system menu › › › .

› *Driving profile:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » page 126)
› *Road layout response* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
› *Speed limit response* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of ACC

illuminates together with .

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the ACC system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
4. If the brake lights are working and the ACC system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane

Use

Lane Assist helps keeping the vehicle in the lane. It is guided by demarcation lines, which may be boundary lines, road edges or objects such as kerbs or crash barrier.

The system is designed primarily for driving on the motorway

Functionality

If the vehicle approaches the demarcation line, the system will turn the steering wheel in the direction away from the demarcation line. The steering intervention can be manually corrected.

If the system determines that there is no driver activity or that the steering wheel is not held correctly during an intervention, a warning message will appear in the instrument cluster prompting the driver to stay in the centre of the lane or to take control of the vehicle.

If you do not react to the warning, Emergency Assist may be activated depending on vehicle equipment » page 146.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: The system will not intervene when changing lanes with the turn signal on.

Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle by means of the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing. The system will intervene even if the direction light is on.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

Illuminated – the system is activated and not prepared to intervene

Illuminated – the system is activated and prepared to intervene

illuminated – the system is intervening

illuminated – system is deactivated

Display view



Highlighted right bar: the system intervenes when the vehicle is approaching the demarcation line on the right.

Steering wheel vibration warning

The steering wheel vibrates in the following situations:

› The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.
› *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on.
› *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror

housing, the steering wheel will vibrate even if the direction light is on.
› If the steering wheel vibrates, correct the steering control.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 65 km/h.
✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the *Lane Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

ⓘ The system can also be activated/deactivated in the control centre » page 84 or in the Infotainment system favourite functions » page 80, if the Lane Assist button is set.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

ⓘ After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
2. Switch off the engine and restart it after a while.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed and distance from the vehicle in front of you.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the Lane Assist a ACC functions.

ⓘ Travel Assist is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.
› Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress

Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress

illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

If you do not respond to the warning, the system will automatically shut down or the Emergency Assist will be activated (depending on vehicle equipment).

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Conditions

✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

The Travel Assist system is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

In addition to these limitations, observe the ACC limitations » *page 137*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Switching between Travel Assist, ACC, and the speed limiter

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **CANCEL** » *page 139* position.

Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » *page 141* and ACC » *page 140*.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Side Assist – lane change system

Use

The system warns of vehicles that may pose danger when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

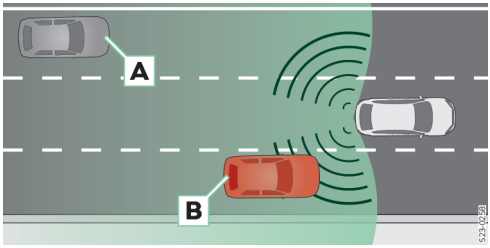
The system warns of an approaching car by means of a warning light ■ in the external mirror housing on the side where the car is detected. If there is a risk of collision, an audible signal will sound.

The indicator light brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

⚠ WARNING

In strong sunlight, the indicator light may be hard to see.

Driving situations in which the system provides warning



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster the A vehicle is approaching, the sooner the warning light starts to warn you.

The B vehicle is being overtaken by your vehicle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h higher. The warning light does not indicate if you are overtaking faster than this.

The indicator light

■ **illuminated** – there is another vehicle behind you

■ **flashing** – there is another vehicle behind you and on the same side, the direction light is on.

On vehicles with the Lane Assist system, the warning light also flashes if your vehicle crosses the line of demarcation towards the approaching vehicle. The system will also vibrate the steering wheel.

The Lane Assist system with steering wheel vibration must be activated and the line of demarcation between the vehicles must be detected.

Conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is over 12 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Restrictions

The system does not detect the lane width. Therefore, in the following cases, for example, it may warn you of a vehicle in a further lane:

- › A vehicle is driving on a roadway with narrow lanes or on the edge of the lane.
- › The vehicle is negotiating a bend.

The system may warn of objects along the road, such as high barriers, noise barriers or tunnel walls.

In the following cases, the system may not warn of a vehicle or may warn incorrectly:

- › Unfavourable weather conditions.
- › The vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- › The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve or roundabout.
- › The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- › The 12V vehicle battery has been disconnected, the function must be activated » page 49.

Settings

Automatic activation

Only valid for certain countries.

Side Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activating/deactivating and setting brightness

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

illuminated

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Use

Traffic sign recognition shows traffic signs on the instrument cluster screen. It also warns you when you are speeding.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

- › Traffic signs in the traveled route section
- › A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Traffic signs displayed

- › Speed limit
- › No overtaking
- › No entry – one-way traffic
- › Warning signs
- › Additional traffic signs, e.g. speed limit on wet roads

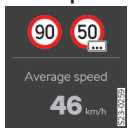
Driving with a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the towing bracket, the traffic signs applicable to driving with a trailer are also displayed.

Driving on a road without a speed limit

If you are on a road without a speed limit, the traffic sign will appear on the screen.

Example of traffic sign display



Status display on the instrument cluster screen

lights up – unavailable map data

OFF lights up – the set warning is not in accordance with the legislation

Speed units

The speed data on the displayed traffic signs are in the units valid in the respective country.

For example, 30 can mean 30 km/h or 30 mph, depending on the country.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- › The sensor is dazzled by the sun or the lights of oncoming traffic.

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle or a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
› Traffic signs are obscured, damaged or not up to standard.
› Traffic signs are mounted on lighted shields with flashing lights.
› Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.

Settings

Automatic activation

When the ignition is switched on, the system is activated automatically to a setting that complies with legislation.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select *Speed warning*.

Activation/deactivation and setting of the speed warning in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

■ *Speed warning:*

› *Active*
› *Speed warning:* – setting a warning when speeding
› *Warning threshold* – increasing the speed limit for the speed warning[1)]
› *Info sound when changing the permitted maximum speed*

Activation/deactivation and setting of trailer recognition in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

■ *Trailer recognition*

› *Active* – deactivating/activating the display of traffic signs valid for driving with a trailer
› *Maximum speed for trailers* – setting maximum speed for driving with a trailer

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Proactive passenger protection – Crew Protect Assist

Use

The Proactive Crew Protection system activates measures to protect the occupants of the vehicle in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, the following safety measures are activated:

› Hazard warning lights start flashing.
› Open windows begin to close to a small gap.
› Sunroof starts to close.
› The front seat belts are pulled against the body.

ⓘ The system's response depends on the selected driving mode.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the system is intervening

Risk of frontal collision

Applies to vehicles with Front Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a frontal collision.

Risk of rear-end collision

Applies to vehicles with Side Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent rear-end collision risk.

Danger if the driver is not active

Applies to vehicles with Emergency Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent danger when the driver is inactive.

Hazards when crossing the intersection

Applies to vehicles with Front Cross Traffic Assist

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a side-impact collision when passing through an intersection.

Restrictions

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› When ASR is deactivated
› When ESC Sport is activated

---

1) *Standard* means increase in speed limit approximately by 1 km/h and 3 % of the permissible speed.

› When the Sport mode is selected.
› When reversing
› In the event of ESC, reversible seatbelt, or airbag system malfunction
› In the event of a fault or malfunction of the Front Assist system
› In the event of malfunction or restricted operation of the Emergency Assist system
› In the event of malfunction or restricted operation of the Side Assist – lane change assistant
› In the event of malfunction or restricted operation of the Front Cross Traffic Assist

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Proactive passenger protection fault

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection

Functionality

The Fatigue detection assistant evaluates the vehicle's handling. If it detects signs of driver fatigue, it will recommend a pause from driving. The display in the instrument cluster lights up with and at the same time an acoustic signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not warn if you fall into a microsleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

› Stopping and switching off the ignition
› Stopping, unbuckling the seat belt and opening the driver's door
› Stopping for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may recommend a break incorrectly.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation, setting sensitivity

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of fatigue detection

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Inattention detection

Functionality

Driver inattention assist monitors driver's behaviour when driving the car. If the system detects driver's inattention, the display in the instrument cluster lights up with and at the same time an acoustic signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

Driver inattention assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 10 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation, sound warning, sensitivity setting

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of driver inattention assistant

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Emergency Assist – assistant for emergency situations

Use

The Emergency situations assistant recognises driver inactivity that may be caused by, for example, sudden

loss of consciousness. The system then takes action to stop the vehicle as safely as possible.

Functionality

If the assistant detects driver inactivity

› An audible signal sounds and a Lane Assist » page 140 or Travel Assist warning message will be displayed on the instrument cluster » page 141.
› If the driver does not resume control after repeated warnings, the warning lights will come on and the car will automatically brake.
› Automatic braking of the vehicle may also be activated after a warning message is briefly displayed when the situation is assessed as an emergency by the assistant.
› When the vehicle stops, the parking brake is applied and, depending on the vehicle's equipment, an emergency call may be initiated.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen

SOS illuminated – the system is intervening

Interrupting automatic braking

› By strongly depressing the brake or accelerator pedal
› By abruptly swivelling the steering wheel from side to side

Conditions

✓ Lane Assist or Travel Assist is activated and the lane lines are detected.

Settings

Automatic activation

Emergency assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Emergency Assist malfunction

SOS illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Eco Assist automatic power regeneration assistant

Use

Eco Assist supports economical driving by means of instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Functionality

If the system evaluates a possible improvement in fuel economy, the following information will be displayed in the instrument cluster:

› A symbol of an upcoming event, e.g. speed limit, intersection, etc.
› – recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle adjusts its speed and power regeneration to the current situation.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

Restrictions

The feature is not available in the following cases:

› When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is activated.
› When the cruise control is activated.
› When the Sport mode is selected.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

On the Infotainment system menu › › › .

Parking assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system screen and an acoustic signal sounds.

The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

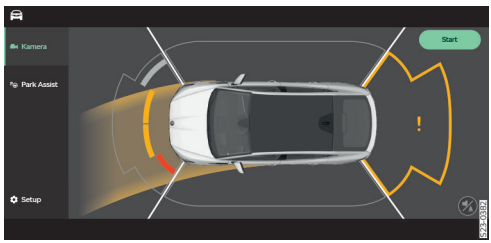
Automatic emergency braking

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic emergency braking can be activated and deactivated in the Infotainment system menu > P > ⚙ > Ⓐ.

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



Switching off/on the audible alarm

Park assist

! System fault

! Dirty or covered sensors

Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres

Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres

Obstacle outside the driving path

Conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Switching on/off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press 🚗 > P on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic activation when driving forward

When approaching an obstacle at speeds below 10 km/h.

Automatic braking is not activated during automatic activation.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Automatic deactivation

The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not issue an obstacle warning, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- › Unfavourable weather conditions.
- › The detected obstacles moving.
- › Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- › The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

To view the system setting menu, do the following:

› Press 🚗 > P > ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select Parking Aid

Troubleshooting

Parking aid Park Pilot malfunction

P illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.

2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

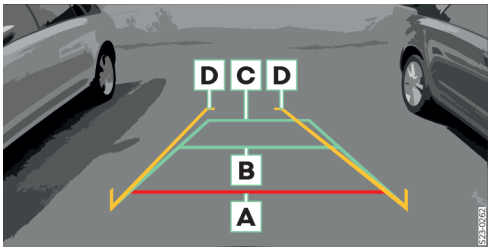
Functionality

When reversing, the Infotainment screen will show the area behind the vehicle with orientation lines.

1 The camera is equipped with a washer. Spraying is done automatically together with the rear window spraying or via the function surface on the Infotainment system display.

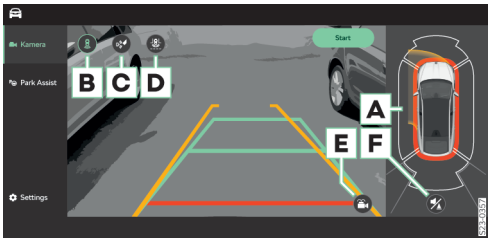
Overview

Orientation lines



- **A** Distance about 40 cm
- **B** Distance about 100 cm
- **C** Distance about 200 cm
- **D** The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function buttons



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Parking aid preview
- **B** Perpendicular parking mode
- **C** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **D** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **E** Function area for the rear camera washer
- **F** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

Full parking aid screen can be activated by tapping the preview.

Conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

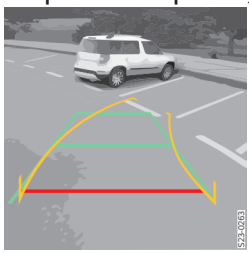
Switching on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press > P > on the Infotainment system screen.

Perpendicular parking mode



1. Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
2. Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking gap.
3. Stop at the latest when the red line reaches the rear boundary (e.g. kerb).

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

On a vehicle with a factory fitted towing device, this mode helps to guide the vehicle towards the trailer's draw bar. The screen shows the track line for guiding to the trailer.

Rear view mode

The screen shows the area behind the vehicle in a wide-angle view.

Switching off the system

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press P on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen, including narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

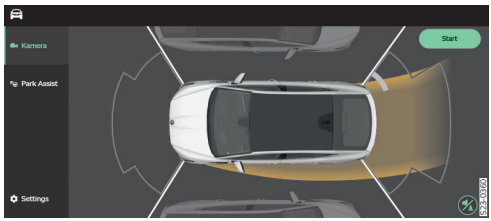
Monitoring the surroundings Top View

Use

Monitoring the surroundings assists with parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle's surroundings.

Overview

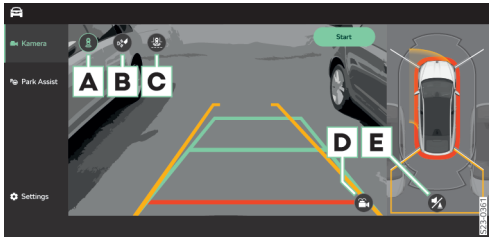
Overall view



Selecting the view

Select the view by touching the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette on the Infotainment system screen. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the screen.

Rear camera view

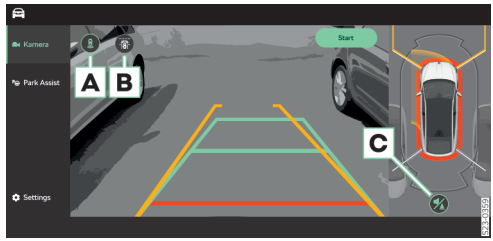


The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **C** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **D** Function area for the rear camera washer
- **E** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a washer. Spraying is done automatically together with the rear window spraying or via the function surface on the Infotainment system display.

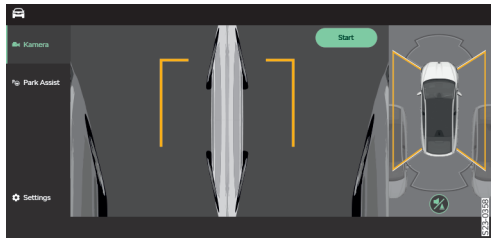
Front camera view



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Front view mode (wide-angle view)
- **C** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

Side camera view



Left and right-hand side.

The yellow line is shown approximately 40 cm from the vehicle.

Conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press > P > on the Infotainment system screen.

Selecting the view

› Tap the area next to, in front of or behind the silhouette of the vehicle in the Infotainment system. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the screen.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press P on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some objects may not be sufficiently visible, such as narrow posts, wire fences, grates, or uneven roadways.

Objects in the vicinity of the corners of the vehicle may be out of the field of view of the cameras and therefore may not be shown on the display.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

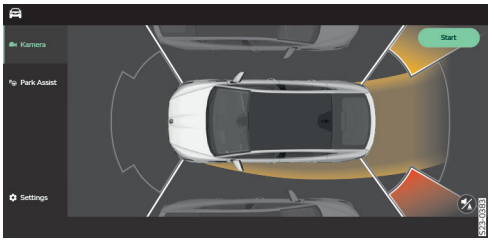


Rear Traffic Alert warns you of approaching vehicles when reversing.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

System signalling

A graphic warning will be displayed on the Infotainment system screen when a vehicle is detected approaching in the area behind your vehicle. A continuous audible signal sounds when reversing.



■ Vehicle in collision zone – risk of collision!

■ Vehicle approaching

Conditions

✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing device socket.

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.

› The object is approaching at a very high speed.

⚠ WARNING

The system may not alert you to people behind the car.

Settings

To view the system **activation/deactivation** menu, do the following:

1. Press › P › ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Troubleshooting

Rear Traffic Alert malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle

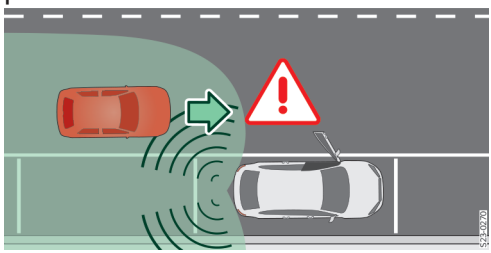
Use

The door release assistant warns of approaching objects when opening the door to prevent a possible collision.

Functionality

The assistant monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

Driving situations in which the system provides alerts



Situations in which the system alerts

› The warning light ■ in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected flashes and then it illuminates.
› A warning tone is emitted.

Alert if there is no imminent collision

› The warning light ■ in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected illuminates.

⚿ The indicator light will illuminate even if the doors are closed and the automatic gearbox is in **P** mode.

Conditions

✓ The vehicle is stationary.
✓ Ignition is on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is greater than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

The assistant remains active for approximately 3 minutes:

› After the ignition is switched off
› After the vehicle is unlocked and the door opened

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.
› The object is approaching at a very high speed.
› The 12V vehicle battery has been disconnected, the function must be activated » page 49.

Settings

Automatic activation

Only valid for certain countries.

Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

To display the system **activation/deactivation** menu, do the following:

1. Press 🚗 › P › ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Trailer manoeuvring assistant Trailer Assist

Use

Trailer assist helps when you reverse with the trailer.

What you should be mindful of

In the following cases, use the system with extra caution:

› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› If snow chains are fitted, or a temporary wheel.

ⓘ NOTICE

The system does not warn of obstacles or monitors the area behind the trailer. The driver must check themselves as to whether there are no obstacles in the area behind the trailer.

Functionality

The rear camera monitors the trailer coupling angle. The system controls the steering wheel accordingly to move the trailer in the desired direction. The driver only operates the pedals and the automatic gearbox selector lever.

The desired direction is set by the driver using the exterior mirror controls.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is below 5 km/h.
✓ ASR is activated and not intervening.

- ✓ The boot lid is closed.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ A single or double-axle trailer without a swivel axle is attached behind the vehicle.
- ✓ The trailer coupling is not covered.
- ✓ The trailer is not turned too far to one side.

Operation

Before switching on

› Make several turns or go around a curve with the trailer attached.

The system will detect the trailer coupling length to allow the maximum range of manoeuvring angle.

Switching on the system

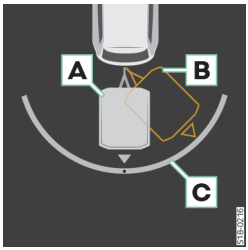
1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Engage reverse gear.
3. Let go of the steering wheel and press › *Start* on the Infotainment system display.

Manoeuvring



› Tilt the exterior mirror control to the right or left.

The display in the instrument cluster will show the adjustment display.



- **A** Current trailer position
- **B** Desired trailer position
- **C** Manoeuvring angle range

1. Tilt the control to the right or left to set the desired trailer position.
2. Start reversing.

   The settings can be adjusted during reversing.
3. When the desired trailer position is reached, stop.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel arms during the parking manoeuvre.

› Only operate the pedals and the automatic transmission selector lever.

Aligning the vehicle combination along one axis

1. Tilt the control lever backwards.
2. Drive forward and backward until the desired position of the vehicle combination is reached.

Switching off the system

› Tap *Cancel* on the Infotainment system display.

Automatic deactivation of the system

The system will automatically switch off and brake if the following situations occur during a parking manoeuvre:

› Press *Cancel* on the Infotainment system display.

› Opening the driver's door

› Gripping the steering wheel

› The trailer has turned too far to the side

Smart parking assistant

Use

The assistant is designed to automatically park the vehicle in a row of vehicles parked in parallel or perpendicularly.

Functionality

Smart parking assistant functionality:

› Finding suitable parking spaces.

› Automatic reversing into a parallel or perpendicular parking space.

› Automatic forward parking into a perpendicular parking space.

› Pulling out in front from a parallel parking space.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of a parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision during the parking manoeuvre, it applies automatic emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the collision.

Conditions

- ✓ No action of ASR.
- ✓ The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Switching on/off

› Press › P › P on the Infotainment system screen.

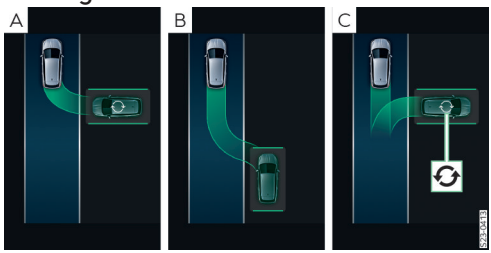
Finding a parking spot

› Drive along the line of parked cars at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
› When looking for a perpendicular parking space, drive at a speed of less than 20 km/h.
› When looking for a parallel parking space, drive at a speed of less than 40 km/h.

Before the parking manoeuvre

1. Once you have found a parking space, pull over and follow the instructions on the infotainment display.
2. If the system offers more than one parking space, select the preferred one by pressing it on the Infotainment display.

Parking manoeuvre variants



A Rear parking in a perpendicular parking space
B Rear parking in a parallel parking space
C Front parking in a perpendicular parking space
⟳ Tapping the symbol – change parking mode

Parking manoeuvre

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

1. Tap *Start* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Monitor your surroundings and follow the instructions on the Infotainment system display.

ⓘ You can interrupt the parking manoeuvre at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. When the brake pedal is released, the parking manoeuvre will continue.

Terminating the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

› By tapping P on the Infotainment system display
› By intervening in the steering
› By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

Automatic parking without searching for a parking space first

Forward parking:

1. Pull partially forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space.
2. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Rear parking:

1. Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
2. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Leaving a parallel parking space

1. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Restrictions

In some countries, the smart parking assistant is restricted for legal reasons.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to leave using the Park Assist. A relevant message will appear on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
› If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
› The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
› Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  › Obstacles are moving.
  › The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  › The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.
  › Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are

replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Park assistant with memory function

Use

The assistant enables automatic parking of the car along a pre-saved route to an parking space with no roof and then leaving the parking space using Rear Traffic Alert.

ⓘ The assistant does not allow parking or leaving the parking space from a covered parking area due to the unavailability of the GPS signal.

Functionality

Park Assist with memory function allows you to store up to 5 parking spots that you can automatically park into or out of repeatedly.

The system stores the location and name of the parking space in memory.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of the stored parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision, it applies automatic emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the collision.

Conditions

- ✓ No action of ASR.
- ✓ GPS signal is available.
- ✓ The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

Activation / storing a parking spot

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake and leave the ignition on.
3. Press > > > on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Use the displayed keypad to name and save the parking spot.

Parking in a stored parking spot

1. At a distance of up to 70 m from the stored parking spot, drive at a speed of less than 45 km/h towards the parking spot.
2. Once the system detects the route to the stored parking spot, follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen.

When the parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding message will be displayed and an acoustic signal will sound.

Leaving a stored parking spot

This function is only available after parking using the Park Assist with memory function.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press > > > on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Monitor your surroundings and follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Tap *Start* on the Infotainment system screen.
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Interrupting the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

- › By tapping on the Infotainment system display
- › By intervening in the steering
- › By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

ⓘ You can interrupt the parking manoeuvre at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. When the brake pedal is released, the parking manoeuvre will continue.

Restrictions

In some countries, Park Assist with memory function is not available for legislative reasons.

If parking is not possible using the memory function of Park Assist, a message will appear on the Infotainment system display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

- › Unfavourable weather conditions.
- › The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- › If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
- › If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
- › The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
- › Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  - › Obstacles are moving.

› The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
› The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.
› Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Remotely controlled parking

Functionality

The function allows you to park or park out your car using MyŠkoda application on a compatible mobile phone.

The movement of the car is controlled by holding P in MyŠkoda application.

You can interrupt the movement of the car at any time by releasing P and resume by holding P.

The manoeuvre is also interrupted if the car detects an obstacle or runs over a large bump.

If the system detects a risk of a collision during the parking manoeuvre, it applies automatic emergency braking to avoid the collision or minimise its consequences.

Parking with Smart parking assistant

This function enables the following operations:

› Parking in a transverse or longitudinal parking space.
› Parking out from a transverse parking space.
› Adjusting the car for safe exit from a longitudinal parking space.

Parking with smart parking assistant with memory function

This function allows you to park in a pre-stored parking space.

ⓘ The assistant does not allow parking in a sheltered parking space due to the unavailability of the GPS signal.

Operating conditions

✓ The mobile phone is fully functional and compatible.
✓ MyŠkoda application is installed on the mobile phone.
✓ Your mobile phone is paired and connected via Bluetooth® with the car » page 155.
✓ The driver carries the car key and remains in the immediate vicinity of the car (no car key may be left in the car).
✓ GPS signal is available (applies to parking by means of Park Assist with memory function).

Operation

Pairing and connecting your phone to the car

To use the remote parking function, you must pair and connect your phone to the car using Bluetooth®.

ⓘ This does not include pairing and connecting to the Infotainment system to use phone services or streaming audio.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press › P › on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select remote control Parking Aid
4. In MyŠkoda application parking menu, scan the QR–code displayed on the Infotainment system screen.
5. Wait for establishing a connection or confirm the displayed messages.

Interrupting the connection between the phone and the car

The connection between the phone and the car can be interrupted in the following cases, for example:

› An incoming phone call
› Long distance between the phone and the car
› Bluetooth® signal interference

When the connection is interrupted, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display.

Parking

1. Select the desired parking space.
2. Press P on the Infotainment system screen
3. Wait for the prompt to leave the car.
4. Get out of the car, keeping the key with you.
5. Check the area around the car and the parking space.
6. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda application and confirm any messages.
7. Hold down START ENGINE STOP for a long time.
8. Hold P, the car will start and park.

ⓘ You can interrupt the movement of the car at any time by releasing P and resume by holding P.

After parking, the engine is automatically switched off, the parking brake is applied and the car is locked.

The mobile phone screen will show a message indicating that the parking manoeuvre has been completed and any additional information.

Parking out from a transverse parking space

1. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda application and confirm any messages.
2. Hold START ENGINE STOP to switch on the ignition.
3. Check the area around the car.
4. In MyŠkoda application, select the desired direction of parking out by pressing ↓ or ↑.
5. Hold P, the car will start and park out.

The mobile phone screen will show a message indicating that the parking manoeuvre has been completed and any additional information.

Parking out from a longitudinal parking space

1. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda application and confirm any messages.
2. Hold START ENGINE STOP to switch on the ignition.
3. Check the area around the car.
4. In MyŠkoda application, select the desired direction of parking out by pressing ↰ or ↱.
5. Hold P, the car will move slightly and set the front wheels in position for safe exit.

Restrictions

When using the function, the user is obliged to comply with the generally applicable legislation in force in the country in question, whereby the use of Remotely controlled parking may not be permitted in some countries. This is particularly the case in the event of a violation of the law in terms of the mandatory presence of the driver in the car and the obligation to fully dedicate oneself to driving.

In most countries, the person using the function is still considered to be the driver and road user. This person is responsible for the operation of the car as long as the Remotely controlled parking function is used.

Do not use Remotely controlled parking on the following cases:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
- The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
- Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  - Obstacles are moving.
  - The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  - The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

Bonnet

Operation

Before opening

1. Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
2. Keep away from the engine compartment.

Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dashboard.



› Release the lock.
› Raise the bonnet enough for the gas springs to keep it open.

Closing

1. Pull the bonnet downwards.
2. Slam the bonnet lightly from a height of approximately 20 cm.
3. Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

› Do not push against the bonnet when it is not closed properly, there is a risk of its deformation.
› Open and close the bonnet again.

Engine oil

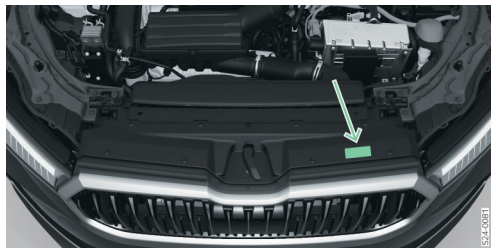
Regulations



Engine oil sticker

A Engine oil specifications
B Engine oil viscosity

The engine oil sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment.



If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use the oil indicated on the sticker at the front of the engine compartment.

When using the prescribed oil, the level can be adjusted as often as required.

If the engine oil label on your car is missing, you can get information on the prescribed engine oil car from a specialist garage.

In an emergency

If engine oil of the prescribed specification is not available, you can once add until the next scheduled oil change a **maximum** of **0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications:

› **Vehicles with petrol engine**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, ILSAC GF-6A and API SP. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.
› **Vehicles with diesel engine**: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API CK-4. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.

Škoda Auto recommends that the oil change is then carried out by a specialist garage .

Checking the fill level and topping up

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine may consume up to 0.5 l/ 1000 km Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

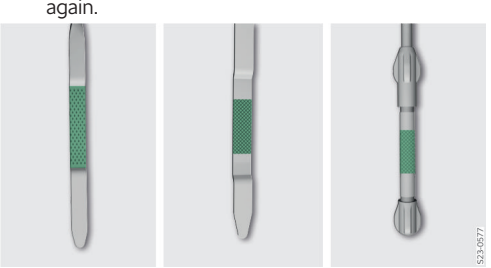
› Regularly check the oil level.

Conditions for inspection and topping up

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface
✓ Engine switched off, at operating temperature

Checking the fill level in vehicles with an oil dipstick

1. Wait at least 2 minutes for the oil to flow into the oil sump.
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
4. Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



› The oil level must be within the marked range.

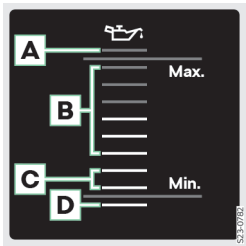
NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› The oil level must not be outside the marked range.
  › If the oil level is **below** the marked area, do not continue driving, stop the engine, top up the engine oil or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
  › If the oil level is **above** the marked area, continue driving with appropriate caution at low engine speed, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Do not use any oil additives.

Checking the fill level in vehicles with an oil dipstick

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Wait at least 2 minutes for the oil to flow into the oil sump.
3. Tap › › › *Oil level* on the Infotainment system screen, and the following oil level screen will appear



A Engine oil level too high
  › You can continue driving carefully at low engine speed, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
B Required oil level range
C Low oil level range
  › Top up oil.
D Critically low oil level
  › Top up oil.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› The oil level must not be outside the **B** marked range.
  › If the oil level is **below** the **D** marked area, do not continue driving, stop the engine, top up the engine oil or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
  › If the oil level is **above** the **A** level, continue driving with appropriate caution at low engine speed, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Do not use any oil additives.

Refuelling

1. Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
2. Top up the oil to the correct specification » *page 157* in 0.5 litre portions.
3. Check the oil level.
4. Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

NOTICE

Škoda Auto recommends using approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant VW standard. The use of engine oils that do not comply with this standard could damage the engine.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends engine oils from the Škoda Genuine Parts product range.

Replacing

Škoda Auto recommends that the oil change is carried out by a specialist garage .

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

flashes, simultaneously illuminates ⚠

› Check the engine oil level » page 158.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates required engine oil top up.

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required » page 158.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates the need to reduce the engine oil level.

› Check the engine oil level » page 158.

Engine oil level too high.

› You can continue driving carefully at low engine speed, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor malfunction

illuminates together with ⚠

Message regarding the engine oil sensor.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Oil level indicator is not displayed or is displayed in grey

› Is the ignition on?

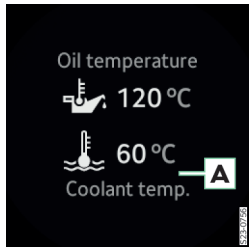
› Is the engine warmed up to operating temperature?

› Is the engine switched off?

› Have you waited for the oil to flow into the sump after switching off the engine?

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A An example of the coolant temperature screen in the instrument cluster

– – – °C: Temperature up to 50 °C is not displayed.

› Avoid high engine speed.

Low temperature: from 50 °C – 70 °C

› Avoid high engine speed.

Operating temperature: from 70 °C – 120 °C

High temperature: from 120 °C – 130 °C

› Do not continue driving, turn off the engine and check the coolant level » page 159.

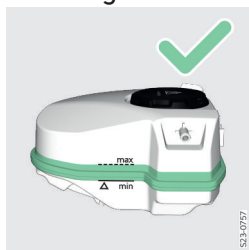
Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Engine switched off and cold

Checking the fill level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the **MIN** mark, top up the coolant.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refuelling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.

› Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

1. Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
2. Refill with coolant with the correct specification.
3. Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.
4. Check the coolant level the following day. If the coolant level has decreased below the **MIN** mark, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) coolant to top up.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level too low

illuminates together with ⚠
Message indicates the required coolant check.

› Check the coolant level » page 159.

If the coolant level is OK:

› Check or change the radiator fan fuse » page 169, Removing and inserting.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠
Report indicates engine overheating.

1. Do not continue driving.
2. Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
3. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

1. Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
2. Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

1. Do not continue driving.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminated
The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault in the diesel engine control system

flashing

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault in the diesel engine glow plug

illuminated, of if it does not light up after ignition is switched on

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Particulate filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particulate filter

illuminates together with ⚠

› Carry out the filter cleaning procedure » page 161.

ⓘ If the indicator light illuminates, you must count with increased fuel consumption, reduced engine power and unavailable START-STOP function.

Filter cleaning

Cleaning condition

✓ The vehicle engine is at the operating temperature.

The procedure for vehicles with a diesel engine

› Drive at a minimum speed of 60 km/h with the engine revolutions at least at 2,000/min.

If the filter has been cleaned up, the indicator light goes out.

If the indicator light comes on due to lack of fuel, the process can be interrupted.

› Top up the fuel and continue cleaning the filter.

If the indicator light or does not go out within 40 minutes, the filter has not been cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The procedure for vehicles with a petrol engine

1. Drive at a minimum speed of 80 km/h with the engine speed ranging from 3,000 to 5,000/min.
2. Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle move with a gear engaged for several seconds.
3. Repeat the procedure several times.

If the filter has been cleaned up, the indicator light goes out.

If the indicator light does not go out within 30 minutes, the filter has not been cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Exhaust gas control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system fault

illuminated

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in diesel engine fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fuel filler flap

Operation



1. Press the flap.
2. The flap will automatically open.

(AdBlue®)

Regulations

Use only AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard.

Do not put any additives in the AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a urea–based solution AdBlue® is automatically injected into the exhaust system.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below –11 °C. Automatic heating ensures the system's functionality.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the fill level

The AdBlue® level in the tank is checked automatically.

The range of the vehicle with the current AdBlue® level and the information on the minimum and maximum AdBlue® volume to refill can be displayed in the trip data in the instrument cluster screen under .

If the range with the current level of AdBlue® drops to 0 km, it will not be possible to start the engine.

› Top up the AdBlue® to the maximum, if possible.

Conditions for topping up

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Independent heater switched off
✓ Ignition off
✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

Methods of topping up

› Pump gun at the filling station

› Filling bottle or a canister
› In a professional garage

It is recommended to use bottles and canisters from the Škoda Genuine Parts range for topping up from a refill bottle or a canister. The refill bottles are equipped with an overfill protection system.

Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the cap and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Top up AdBlue® .
4. Do not continue refilling if the AdBlue® tank is full.

   The tank is full when the pump gun is turned off or when the AdBlue® stops flowing from the filler bottle.
5. Place the cap on the neck of the tank and turn it against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.
6. Close the tank flap and click it into place.
7. Switch on the ignition for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the topping up.

   You can then start the engine and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system that injects AdBlue® into the exhaust system!

› Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster.
› The lifetime of AdBlue® is 4 years.

  If the contents of the tank have not been consumed within this time, have it replaced by a specialist garage.
› Do not use expired AdBlue® solution for topping up.

Troubleshooting

Low level of AdBlue®

or illuminated

› Add AdBlue® » *page 161*.

AdBlue® system fault

or illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operation at very low temperatures

If the vehicle is exposed to outdoor temperatures below -11 °C for a long time, AdBlue® in the tank may freeze. A message will appear on the instrument cluster screen. During this time, pollutants are not reduced.

› It is recommended to leave the vehicle in a place with a temperature above -11 °C, e.g. in a garage.

When a sufficient volume of AdBlue® has thawed in the tank, the message will disappear.

Technical data and specifications

The capacity of the AdBlue® tank is approximately 17 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**
› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

ⓘ To make sure that the fuel system works properly, it is recommended to use up the contents of the petrol tank every 6 months until the warning light comes on .

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with the EN 228 European standard (in Russia it is GOST 32513-2013).

Use only **unleaded petrol** with the maximum bioethanol content specified on the label near the fuel filler cap.

ⓘ It is recommended to use petrol with additives from petrol pump dispensers at petrol stations.

Octane number

Use petrol with the octane number specified for your vehicle.

Petrol with a **higher octane number** than that specified for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› When petrol with an octane number lower than that specified is used, only continue driving at mid-

range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.

› Refuel using petrol of the specified octane number as soon as possible.

› Do not use petrol with an octane number **lower** than **91**.

The specified petrol is RON/ROZ 95/min. with 92 or 93 octane number

We recommend using petrol with **95** octane number.

Or you can use the petrol with **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** petrol can be used (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ min. with 95 octane number.

Use petrol with minimum **95** octane number.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ with 98/(95) octane number

We recommend using petrol with **98** octane number.

Or you can use petrol with **95** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additives

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead or e.g. LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.

› Do not put any additional additives to diesel fuel that complies with the EN 228 standard.

› If you are using petrol that does not comply with the EN 228 standard, it is recommended to contact a specialist garage regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by Škoda Auto.

Conditions for refuelling

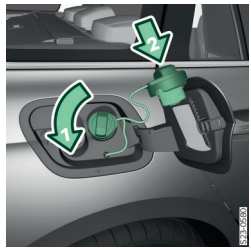
✓ Vehicle unlocked

✓ Independent heater switched off

✓ Ignition off

Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
4. Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
5. Remove the fuel nozzle and place it back on the petrol pump.
6. Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
7. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

Troubleshooting

illuminates – the petrol level has reached the reserve area.

› Refuel.

If any fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used in your vehicle

1. Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

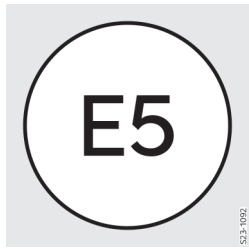
Technical data and specifications

In accordance with the EN 16492 European standard, labels indicating the fuel type and the percentage of bio-component are located in the following places:

› At the fuel filler flap

› On the fuel dispensers or fuelling nozzles

Plates with the fuel type



E5 is the designation for petrol with a maximum bio-based content of 5%.



E10 is the designation for petrol with a maximum bio-based content of 10 %.

The fuel tank capacity is approx. 66 l, including a 6l reserve.

Diesel fuel

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**

› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

ⓘ To ensure that the fuel system functions properly, it is recommended that the diesel fuel tank is used up every 6 months until the warning light comes on ⛽.

Regulations

Standards

Diesel fuel must comply with the EN 590 European standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013), in Vietnam at least EURO 5).

Use only **diesel** that contains **maximum 7 % of biodiesel** (B7).

ⓘ It is recommended to use diesel fuel with additives, which is available from petrol station pumps.

Operation in different climatic conditions

Use only diesel fuel that matches the current or expected climatic conditions.

Additives

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use RME biofuel, even as an additive in diesel fuel.

› Do not put any additional additives to diesel fuel that complies with the EN 590 standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013, in Vietnam at least EURO 5).

› If you are using diesel fuel that does not comply with the EN 590 standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013, in Vietnam at least EURO 5), we recommend that you check with a qualified workshop about the possible use of diesel fuel additives approved by Škoda Auto.

Conditions for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Independent heater switched off
✓ Ignition off

Refuelling

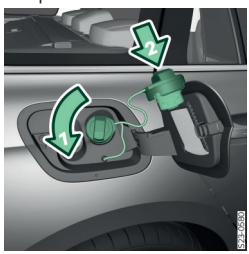
Protection against refuelling with incorrect fuel

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a protection against misfuelling in the filler neck of the fuel tank.

In some countries, the diameter of the pump nozzle may be the same for both diesel and petrol. Before travelling to such a country, have the protection removed by a specialist garage.

Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
4. Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
5. Remove the fuel nozzle and place it back on the petrol pump.
6. Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
7. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

Troubleshooting

⛽ Illuminates – the diesel fuel level has reached the reserve area

› Refuel.

Filling up with other than diesel fuel complying with the standard

1. Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Diesel fuel pump nozzle cannot be easily inserted into the fuel filler neck

› If the pump nozzle cannot be easily inserted into the fuel filler neck, move the nozzle sideways when inserting it.

Technical data and specifications

In accordance with the EN 16492 European standard, labels indicating the fuel type and the percentage of bio-component are located in the following places:

› At the fuel filler flap
› On the fuel dispensers or fuelling nozzles

Plates with the fuel type



B7 is the designation for standard diesel fuel with a maximum bio-based content of 7 %.

The diesel fuel must conform to European standard EN 590.



XTL is the designation for synthetic diesel fuel (it may be marked with the abbreviation HVO or HVO 100 on filling station stands or nozzles).

The synthetic diesel must conform to European standard EN 15940.

ⓘ The B7 and XTL diesel fuels are mutually inter-mixable in any ratio.

The fuel tank capacity is approx. 66 l, including a 6l reserve.

12V vehicle battery and fuses

12V vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12V battery

Wear protective goggles!

The acid in the 12V battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and naked flames away from the 12V battery! Do not smoke!

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when the 12V battery is charged!

Keep children away from the 12V battery!

Follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual!

Protection against discharging the 12V battery

Automatic system-related discharge protection for the 12V battery

- Increases the engine idling speed
- Switches off certain consumers or restricts their use of power

Recommendations when the vehicle is stationary for more than 3 weeks

- Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12V battery.
- Charge the 12V car battery every 4 weeks.

Causes of the 12V battery discharging

- Worn 12V battery
- Frequent short journeys
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time
- The ignition is switched on too long
- The parking lights are switched on too long
- A 12V device is plugged in.

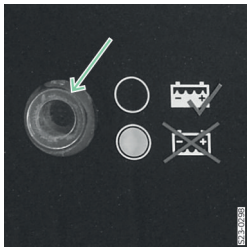
Checking and charging the 12V vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The specialist garage checks the condition of the 12V battery during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12V battery with an acid level indicator.



- Tap on the indicator before testing to clear air bubbles.
- Black – the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow – the acid is too low, the 12V battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12V battery

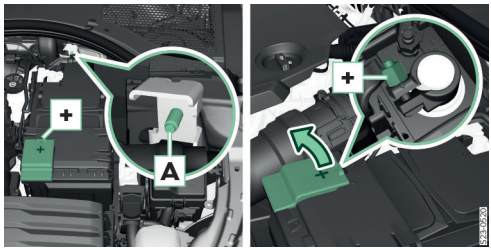
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Power consumers switched off

The process of charging a 12V battery

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!

- To charge the 12V battery, set a max. charging current at 0.1 times its total capacity until fully charged.



Engine compartment: Earth point and ⊕ charging pole

A Earth point

\+ ⊕ charging pole of the 12V vehicle battery (under the cap)

1. Tilt the ⊕ pole cap out.
2. The charger terminal ⊕ must be connected to the ⊕ pole.
3. Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the A earth point.
4. Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.

5. After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
6. Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12V battery.
7. Close the ⊕ pole cap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› Hydrogen is released during charging. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12V battery.
› Do not "quick charge" a 12V battery yourself, have it done by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!

› A flat 12V battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

12V vehicle battery charging fault

 illuminated

Indication on the instrument cluster screen of the 12V vehicle battery charging fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

 illuminated

Indication on the instrument cluster screen of the 12V vehicle battery charging fault

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery fault

 illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster screen about a 12V vehicle battery fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Insufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

 illuminated

Indication on the instrument cluster screen of a weak or discharged 12V vehicle battery

1. Drive a distance of several km to recharge the 12V vehicle battery.

   Or:

   Charge the 12V vehicle battery with the charger.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Self-help

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of fire!

› Do not mix up the connection cables.

Uncoupling

1. Close the power tailgate, all windows, the sunroof and the power sun visor.
2. Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
3. Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Coupling

1. Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

   When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lights illuminate in the instrument cluster.
2. If, after a short distance, one of the above indicator lights does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12V battery

› Window operation » *page 37*.

Replacing

Have the replacement of the 12V vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

The use of an unsuitable 12V car battery will invalidate the type approval.

› When replacing a 12V car battery, it is necessary to use only a 12V car battery designed for your car. We recommend using a 12V car battery from the range of Škoda original parts.

Using jump start cables

Use

A vehicle with a discharged or defective 12V vehicle battery can be started using jump start cables connected to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

› Do not jump start with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12V vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12V vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.
  › The acid level in the 12V vehicle battery is too low » *page 166*.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

Nominal voltage of both vehicle batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged 12V vehicle battery.

Self-help

Using another vehicle's 12V vehicle battery to start the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury! Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Position the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of short circuit

› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.

› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12V vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.

› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connecting the jump start cables

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Connect the terminals of the jump start cables of the discharged 12V vehicle battery and the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery as shown below.

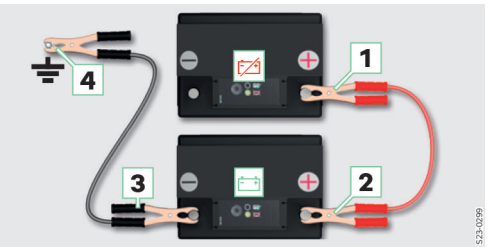


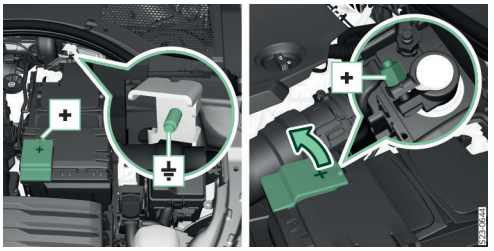
Illustration of the wiring diagram

1 ⊕ pole of the discharged 12V vehicle battery

2 ⊕ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery

3 ⊖ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ earth point in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery



Engine compartment: Earth point / ⊕ 12V vehicle battery pole (under the cover)

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the assistance vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with an internal combustion engine).

   Or:

   Switch on the electric drive of the assistance vehicle (applies to a vehicle with an electric motor).
2. Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery.

   If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cables

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with higher-rated fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

› We recommend using replacement fuses from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may serve several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

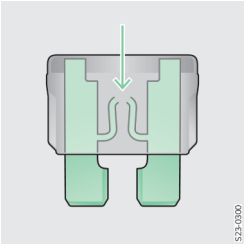
ⓘ NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuses can cause damage to electrical equipment!

› Protect the fuses from dirt and moisture.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.

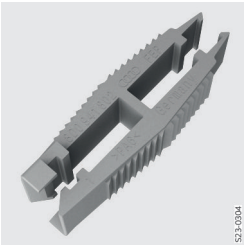


Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ The driver's door open
- ✓ All consumers switched off

Removing and inserting



ⓘ Use the appropriate end of the clamp based on the fuse dimensions.

› Replace the fuse by means of the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel

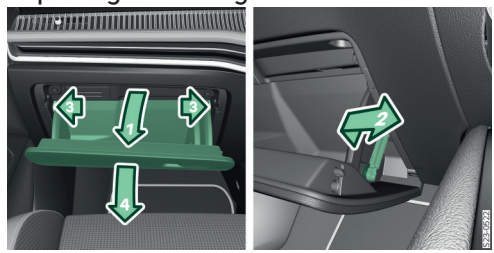
Overview

Replacing fuses – left-hand drive



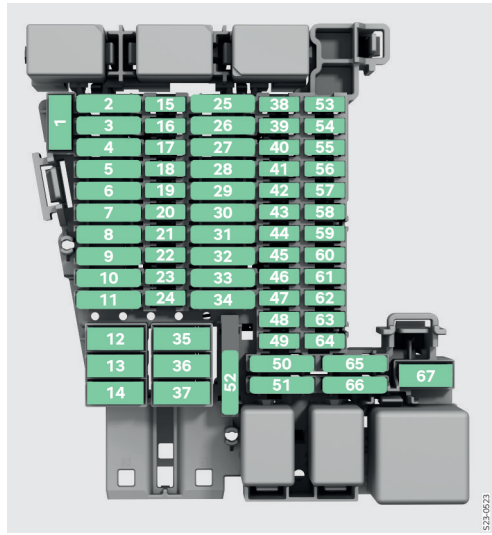
1. Open the fuse box cover.
2. Replace the fuse.
3. Close the fuse box cover.

Replacing fuses – right-hand drive



1. Open the glove compartment on the passenger's side.
2. Release the box brake pull pin.
3. Press the side walls of the box lining and keep them pressed.
4. Tilt the box out.
5. Replace the fuse.
6. Replace the box.
7. Fit and secure the brake pull pin.
8. Close the fuse box.

Fuses overview



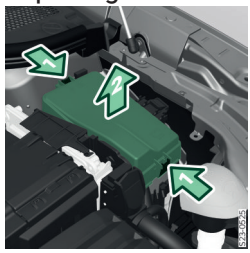
Fuse number	Consumer
3	Towing bracket
4	SCR (AdBlue®)
5	Gearbox control
6	Interior lighting and backlighting
7	Front seat heating
8	Sunroof

Fuse number	Consumer
9	Window controls (left-hand side), left exterior mirror (heating, tilting, glass position adjustment), central locking (left-hand side)
11	Towing bracket
12	Vehicle exterior lighting
13	Central locking, windscreen washers
14	Music amplifier
16	Airbags
18	KESSY (keyless locking), steering wheel lock
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	USB sockets at the front and rear, Phone box
21	Rear radar sensors, parking, rear view camera, monitoring the surroundings system (Top View), contactless operation of the electric boot lid, Car2X communication unit
22	Front camera for assistance systems, front radar sensors, front radar
23	Front right seat with massage function, front right seat ventilation
24	All-wheel drive
25	Front left seat belt retractor
26	Window controls (right-hand side), right exterior mirror (heating, tilting, glass position adjustment), central locking (right-hand side)
27	Front right seat belt retractor
29	Towing bracket
30	The Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
32	Rear seat heating
33	Front left seat with massage function, front left seat ventilation
35	Vehicle exterior lighting
36	Heating/air conditioning fan
37	Electrically operated boot lid, electrically operated roll-up luggage compartment cover
39	Steering wheel heating
40	Alarm
41	Data bus
43	Air conditioning/heating, independent heating, rear window heating, tyre pressure monitoring, Smart Dials
44	Front interior lighting, parking brake, rain and light sensor, lights control, alarm system, diagnostic socket, headlights
45	Control lever under the steering wheel
46	The Infotainment system screen, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
48	USB charging – at the interior rear-view mirror
52	12V sockets
58	Parking
59	Interior rear-view mirror with auto-dimming, air conditioning coolant sensor
60	Diagnostic socket
61	Starter
66	Rear wiper
67	Rear window heating

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Replacing a fuse



1. Press and hold the fuse latch.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Replace the fuse.
4. Fit the cover and click it into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

› Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
2	ESP, engine control system, starter-generator (mHEV)
3	Ignition
4	Front left headlight
5	Front right headlight
7	Automatic gearbox oil pump
9	Horn
10	Front wipers
12	Automatic gearbox
14	Independent heater
17	Electric auxiliary heater
18	Electric auxiliary heater
21	Engine control system
22	Starter
23	Engine control system
24	Engine components
25	Engine components
26	Engine components
27	Engine components
28	Engine components
29	Fuel pump
32	Windscreen heating
33	Electric auxiliary heater

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

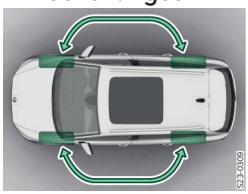
ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
› Clean the light-alloy wheels of gritty materials.
› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

› Incorrect tyre pressure
› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking
› Incorrect wheel alignment
› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

› With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.
› Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

› Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 215/60 R 16 95 V

215 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
16 Wheel diameter in inches
95 Load index
V Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

94 670 kg
95 690 kg
96 710 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

A tyre is considered worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a gauge on the ice scraper. The scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler cap.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
› Check the tread depth regularly.
› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date
The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 48 24 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 48. week in 2024.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
› Do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre
› Temporary wheel » page 174
› Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 174
› Tyre repair kit » page 177

Tyre pressure change
illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures
› In the Infotainment system, select the tire pressure in > > .

All-season or winter tyres

Use
All-season or winter tyres improve performance in winter weather conditions. They are identified by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tyre provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tyre manufacturer's sticker provides information about the grip on ice.

What you should be mindful of
For the best possible performance, use tyres with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on ice-free roads without snow and at temperatures above 7°C.

Usage conditions
When using all-season or winter tyres with a lower speed category than the specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

1. In the Infotainment system, set the speed limit based on the category of tyres fitted.
2. Affix a warning label in the driver's field of view with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (only applies to certain countries).

Settings
Set the speed limit of the tyres in the following Infotainment menu in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Tyres* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Tyres* and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Use
Snow chains improve handling the vehicle on icy or snowy roads.

What you should be mindful of
⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident and tyre damage
› Do not use chains on sections without snow and ice.

! NOTICE
› Remove the wheel covers before fitting the snow chains.
› Mount snow chains on the front wheels only.

Technical data and specifications
Permitted rim and tyre combinations for mounting snow chains:

Rim dimensions	Tyre dimensions
7J×16 ET43	215/60 R16
7J×17 ET43	215/55 R17

Only use snow chains with links no larger than 13 mm, including locks.

SEAL tyres

Use
SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tyres, the vehicle must be equipped with one of the following:

› A spare or a temporary wheel and tools to change it.
› Tyre repair kit

Temporary spare wheel

Overview

Temporary spare wheel

The temporary spare wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or under the variable loading floor in the boot.

The temporary wheel is marked with a warning label on the disc and it is intended to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

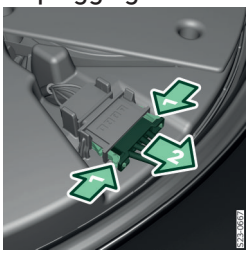
The temporary spare wheel is significantly narrower than the factory-fitted wheels.

Removing and stowing the temporary spare wheel in vehicles with sound system

Removing the toolbox

› Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.

Unplugging the connector



1. Press and hold the locking buttons.
2. Unplug the connector.

Removing the wheel



1. Unscrew the lock nut.
2. Remove the bass loudspeaker.
3. Remove the wheel.

Inserting the wheel

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Insert the bass loudspeaker.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
5. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

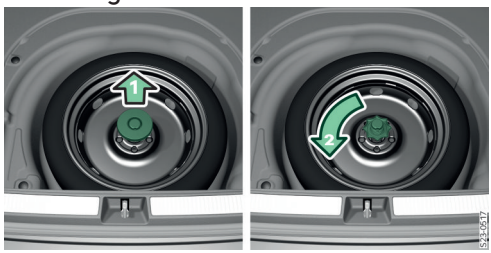
ⓘ
› If the subwoofer does not fit in the wheel you have replaced, stow it in the luggage compartment.
› If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Removing and replacing the temporary spare wheel in vehicles without sound system

Removing the toolbox

› Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.

Removing the wheel



1. Remove the bolt support.
2. Unscrew the lock nut.
3. Remove the wheel.

Inserting the wheel

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Put the fastening strap through the opposite holes in the wheel disc.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the bolt support.
5. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

ⓘ If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before replacing the wheel

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

   Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.

2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel replacement, occupants should stay off the road and safely behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors, the boot and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

› Always make sure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
› Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
› Create a non-slip base (e.g. place a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
› Always lift the vehicle with the doors closed.
› Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.
› Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle
› Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

1. Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
2. In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

   The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.
4. Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.
5. Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Do not grease or lubricate screws.
› Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

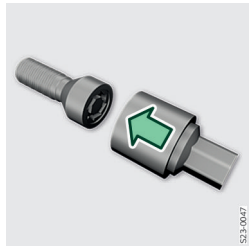
Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Before loosening the bolts

› If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 179.
› If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 179.

Instructions for a vehicle with anti-theft wheel bolts

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

Removing the bolts

⚠ WARNING

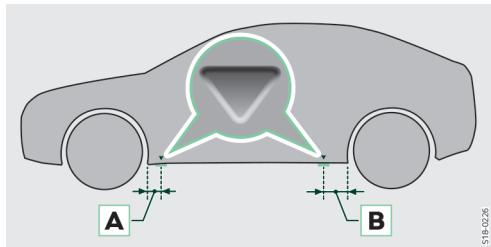
› If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



1. Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
2. Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.

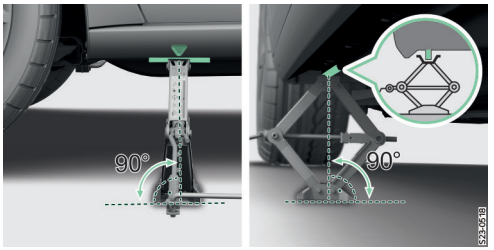


A 16 cm
B 34 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

NOTICE

› Use the jack from the tool kit.



1. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
2. Support the base plate of the jack with its full surface resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
3. Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
4. Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the ground.

Replacing a wheel

1. Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
2. Carefully remove the wheel.
3. Fit the replacement wheel.
4. Contact tighten the bolts.
5. Lower the vehicle.

NOTICE

This applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

1. Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
2. Refit the wheel bolt caps » page 179.

   Or:

   Refit the full wheel covers » page 179.

Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the Škoda Genuine Parts.

Tyre repair kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

› Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

› Do not remove a foreign object such as a screw or nail from a damaged tyre.

Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors and the boot lid and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

1. Place a speed limit sticker in the driver's view.
2. Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
3. If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.
4. If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!
Maximum compressor run time is 8 min.

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

WARNING

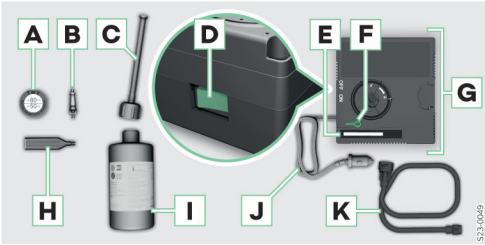
Risk of getting burned!
The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.

› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Overview

The repair kit is stored in a box under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Declaration of conformity is included with the compressor or in the on-board folders.



- **A** Speed limit sticker
- **B** Replacement valve insert
- **C** Filler hose with plug
- **D** Switch
- **E** Pressure indicator
- **F** Pneumatic pressure relief button
- **G** Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
- **H** Extension for removing and inserting the valve insert
- **I** Filling bottle
- **J** Plug for 12V socket
- **K** Tyre inflation hose

Restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

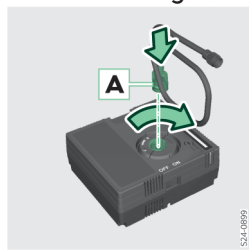
- The rim is damaged.
- Outside temperature is below –30 °C.
- The puncture in the tyre is larger than 4 mm.
- The side of the tyre is damaged.
- The expiry date on the filler bottle has passed.

Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

1. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
2. Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
3. Shake the sealant bottle.
4. Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
5. Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
6. Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
7. Remove the filler hose from the valve.
8. Screw on the valve insert.

Before inflating the tyre



1. Carefully remove the air hose from the rear of the compressor.
2. Insert the end of hose **A** into the compressor.

   The guide protrusions on the hose end must line up with the holes in the compressor.
3. Secure the hose in the compressor by turning it in the direction of the arrow.

Inflating the tyre

1. Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Start the engine.
4. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
5. Switch on the compressor.
6. When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time, which is 8 min.
7. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
8. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
9. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

After inflating the tyre

1. Release the tyre air hose from the compressor by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow.
2. Remove the hose and return it into the back of the compressor.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.
- Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
- Adjust tyre pressure in the environment and at the ambient temperatures in which the vehicle will be operated.

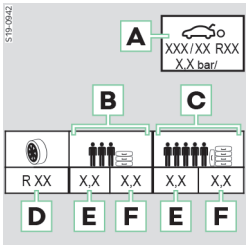
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Label with the specified tyre pressure values

The label with the specified tyre pressure values can be found on the side of the right rear door above the lock.



A Specified tyre pressure value for the temporary wheel

B Tyre pressure in case of partial load

C Tyre pressure when fully loaded

D Tyre diameter in inches

This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. It is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

E Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres

F Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitor indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Tyre pressure change alert

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the Infotainment system, select the tire pressure in > > .

Restrictions

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven wheel loading, e.g. driving with a trailer
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Mounted snow chains

Settings

Storing the tyre pressure

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the tyre pressure.
3. In the displayed Infotainment system menu, tap the function button.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

flashes approx. 1 minute and then remains illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

   If the indicator light flashes again after starting the engine there is a fault in the system.
2. Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure monitoring assistant

Functionality

The system uses sensors in the wheels to measure tyre pressure while driving.

For the system to work correctly, the tyre type and vehicle loading must be selected in the Infotainment system.

When the ignition is switched on, the last measured tyre pressure is displayed. These values are updated when you start driving.

Tyre pressure change alert

illuminated

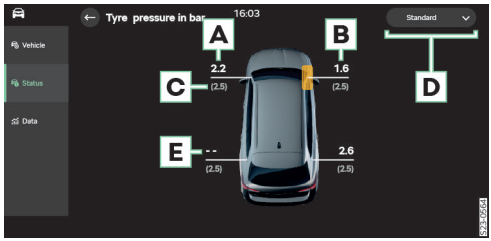
1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Overview

Infotainment system display

1. Select the item to display the vehicle status > > .
2. Select the tyre pressure.

The following menu will appear:



- **A** Tyre pressure
- **B** Low tyre pressure
- **C** Tyre pressure change
- **D** Setting the vehicle load
- **E** Tyre reading not available

When driving, the tyres heat up and the pressure increases. This is quite normal, it is not a malfunction. If the system alerts you to the increase in pressure while driving, do not lower it.

Settings

Tyre type

Set the type of tyres in the following way in the Infotainment system when the engine is switched off:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Tyres* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Tyres* and set the tyre type.

Vehicle load

The vehicle load can be set in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap > > .
2. Select *Tyres*.
3. Tap the ⌄ function key and set the vehicle load.

Or:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Tyres* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Tyres* and set the vehicle load.

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

flashing

1. Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

   If the indicator light flashes again after starting the engine there is a fault in the system.
2. Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Removing and installing bolt caps

Removing



1. Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
2. Remove the cover cap.

Installing

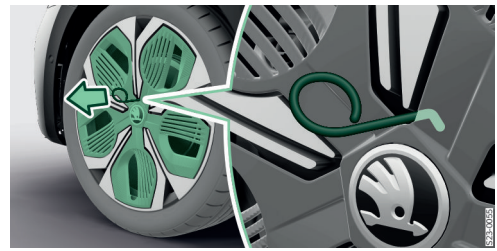
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full-width wheel cover

Removing and installing the trim

Removing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.



1. Put the bracket for removing the wheel trims behind the rim close to the centre.
2. Pull the centre of the wheel trim loose and remove the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.

1. Fit the trim to the wheel rim and gradually push the individual spokes of the trim until they are fully engaged.
2. Push the centre of the trim until it is fully engaged.

NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
2. Push the wheelbrace through the clamp, push on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

   When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

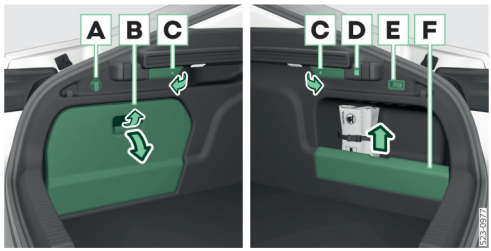
ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

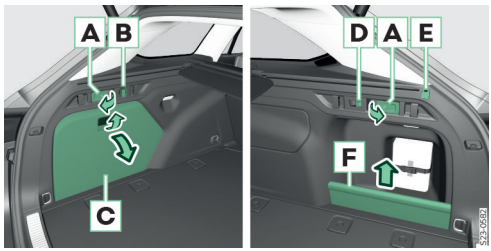
Luggage compartment equipment

Overview



Option 1

- **A** 12V socket
- **B** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **C** Rear seat backrest folding lever
- **D** QR–code
- **E** Towing bracket switch
- **F** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg



Option 2

- **A** Rear seat backrest folding lever
- **B** 12V socket
- **C** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **D** Towing bracket switch
- **E** QR–code
- **F** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg

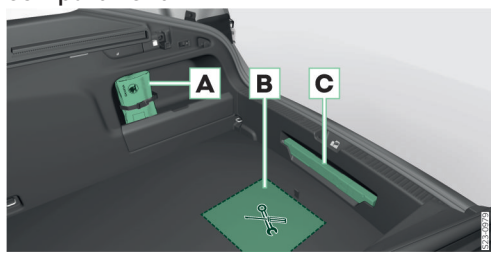
After the QR–code is scanned, a website with video tutorials for selected features of the equipment in the luggage compartment will be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-superb4

Emergency equipment

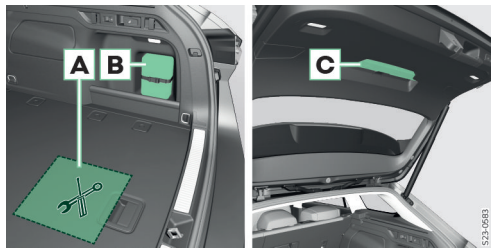
Overview

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



Option 1

- **A** First aid kit location
- **B** Tool kit
- **C** Location of the warning triangle



Option 2

- **A** Tool kit
- **B** First aid kit location

C Location of the warning triangle

Removing the warning triangle

Applies to variant 2.



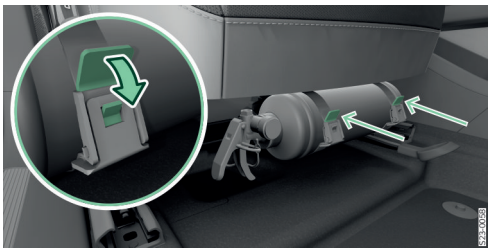
› Press the locking button and remove the warning triangle.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the front and rear doors.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

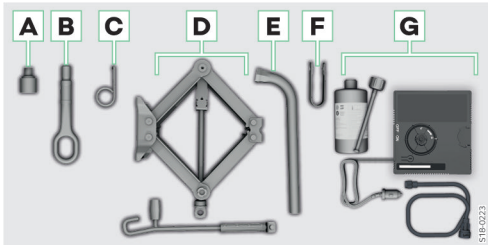
Only valid for certain countries.



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
B Towing eye
C Hook for removing the full wheel covers
D Jack with a sign and crank
E Wheelbrace
F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
G Tyre repair kit

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

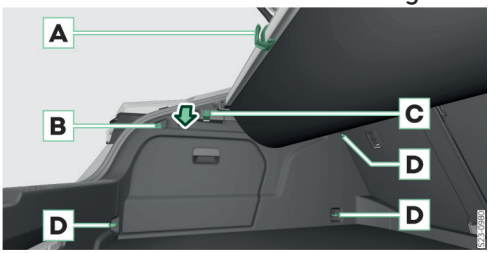
NOTICE

› When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

Fasteners in the boot

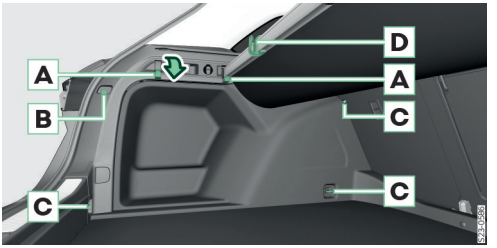
Overview

Vehicle without the variable loading floor



Option 1

A Sliding hook for bags on multifunction pocket
Max. load 2 kg
B Holder for securing the fastening nets
C Bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg
D Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

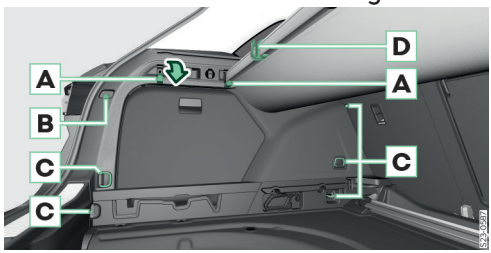


Option 2

A Bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg
B Holder for securing the fastening nets
C Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg
D Sliding hook for bags on the multifunction pocket

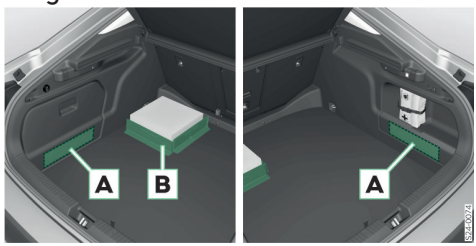
Max. load 2 kg

Vehicle with the variable loading floor

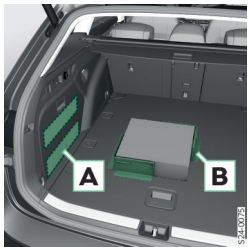


- **A** Bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Holder for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg
- **D** Sliding hook for bags on the multifunction pocket
  Max. load 2 kg

Cargo elements



Option 1



Option 2

- **A** Space for stowing the Cargo elements is in the storage box.
- **B** Cargo elements
  Max. load 8 kg
  - › Fold down the Cargo element and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Securing nets

Overview



Option 1

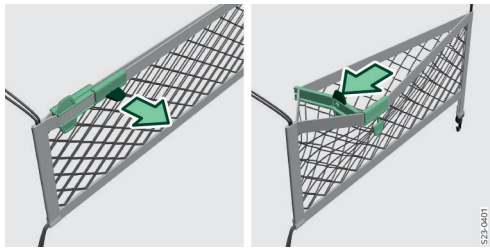


Option 2

The maximum load is indicated on the label of each fastening net.

The location of the fasteners in the luggage compartment may vary depending on the vehicle equipment » *page 182*.

Unfolding/folding up



Multifunction pocket

Operation

Maximum load on the multifunction pocket is 3 kg.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the rear light.

- › The contents of the multifunction pocket must not extend beyond the top edge of the bars.

Unfolding – variant 1



› Pull the pocket by the rear bar and slide it into the desired position.

Unfolding – variant 2



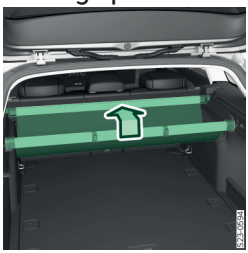
1. Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment.
2. Put the rear bar on the hooks.

Folding up – variant 1



› Push on the rear bar of the pocket and slide it towards the front bar until it clicks into place.

Folding up – variant 2



1. Take the rear mounting bar from the hooks.
2. Attach the rear bar to the front bar and press it together at both ends.

⚠ NOTICE

Applies to variant 1.

› Keep the rails for moving the rear pocket bar clean.

Removing and inserting

Removing – variant 1

› Take the folded pocket up.

Removing – variant 2

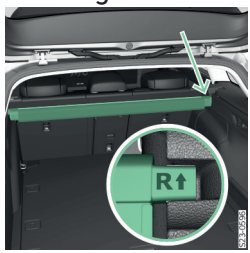
1. Remove the roll-up cover.
2. Take the folded pocket up.

Inserting – variant 1



› Insert the end of the mounting bar marked **R** into the holder on the right-hand side and **L** into the holder on the left-hand side.

Inserting – variant 2



› Insert the end of the mounting bar marked **R↑** into the right lug and **↑L** into the left lug.

Stowing the pocket under the variable loading floor

Applies to variant 2.

› Open and remove the partition from the left storage compartment.

› Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position and lift it.



› Insert the pocket into the recess in the side panels.

When stowing the roll-up cover and the multifunction pocket simultaneously, the rear of the roll-up cover must be placed over the multifunction pocket.

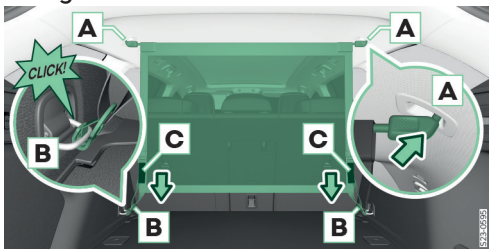
› Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position.

› Replace the partition of the left storage compartment.

Net partition

Fixing the net partition

Fixing at the rear



1. Remove the roller shutter cover or fold down the rear seat backrests.
2. Insert the net partition hook into the A roof bracket an one side.
3. In the same way, fix the hook at the other end of the net partition.
4. Snap the B hooks into the lashing eyes.
5. Tighten the straps by the loose ends C.

Fixing at the front

The procedure is similar to the rear.

The fixing lugs for the hooks are under the centre pillars of the car.

Releasing

Releasing is carried out in the opposite way to fixing.

You can place the net partition folded in the package under the variable loading floor.

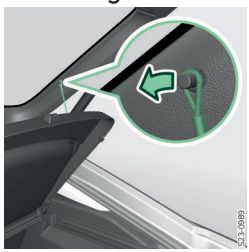
Boot lid

Removing and inserting

⚠ WARNING

› Do not put any items on the rigid boot cover

Removing



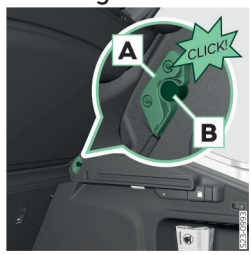
› Unhook the straps.



› Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.

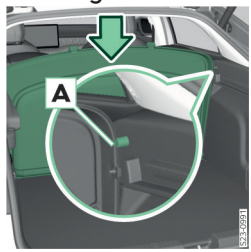
› Remove the cover.

Inserting



1. Insert the mount A opposite the holder B on both sides of the boot.
2. Press on the cover from above until it engages.
3. Hook in the retaining straps.

Stowing the cover behind the rear seats



› Slide the cover between the rear seats and the cover holder A.

⚠ WARNING

The boot cover stowed behind the rear seats restricts the driver's rear view.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Mechanically operated roll-up cover



Retracting:

› Press the cover at the handle.

The cover will wind up.



Extending:

› Pull the cover out by the handle until it clicks into place.

Electrically operated roll-up cover

If the vehicle is equipped with an electrically operated boot lid, the roll-up cover will automatically retract / extend when the lid is opened/closed.

Retracting:

› Open the boot lid.

The cover will automatically retract.

Extending:

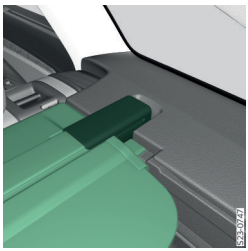
› Close the boot lid.

The cover will automatically extend.

The automatic function of the cover can be manually deactivated, e.g. to increase the space when storing larger loads.

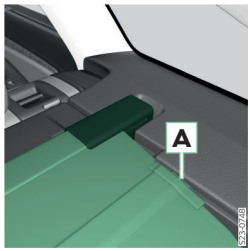


› Press the cover at the handle to fully retract.



If the cover is fully retracted, the automatic function is deactivated.

ⓘ The cover drive mechanism is still functional despite deactivation.

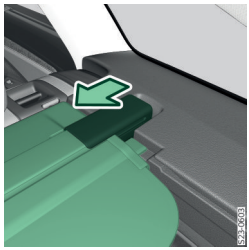


To reactivate the automatic function of the cover, it is necessary to set it to A position.

Removing and inserting

Removing and inserting the retracted cover

Applies to mechanically operated roll-up cover.



› Press the end of the cross bar and remove or insert the cover.

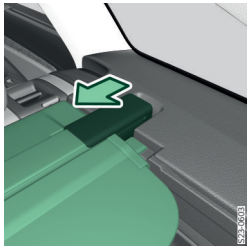
Removing retracted cover

Applies to electrically operated roll-up cover.

To remove the cover, it must be fully retracted.



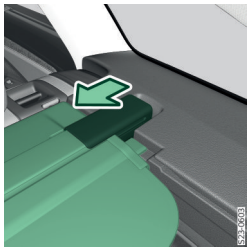
› Press the cover at the handle to fully retract.



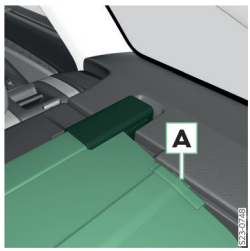
› Press the end of the cross bar and remove the cover.

Inserting retracted cover

Applies to electrically operated roll-up cover.



› Press the end of the cross bar and insert the cover.



The cover must be set to position A to enable the automatic extension function when the boot lid is closed.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

› Open and remove the partition from the left storage compartment.

› Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position and lift it.



› Insert the cover into the recess of the side panels.

When stowing the roll-up cover and the multifunction pocket simultaneously, the rear of the roll-up cover must be placed over the multifunction pocket.

› Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position.

› Replace the partition of the left storage compartment.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

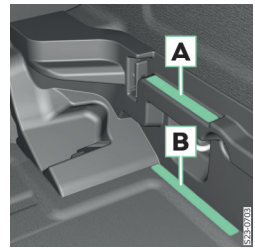
Settings

The maximum load on the variable loading floor in the upper position is 75 kg.

Adjusting the variable loading floor to upper or lower position



› Raise the variable loading floor and pull it towards you so that the front part falls on the carpet in the luggage compartment.



› To adjust it to the upper position, place the front of the variable floor panel on surface A.

› To adjust it to the lower position, place the front of the variable floor panel on surface B.



› Push the variable floor panel forward and put it down.

Securing the variable loading floor in the upper position



› Lift up the rear part of the variable loading floor.



› Use the hook to secure the raised variable loading floor to the boot lid frame.

⚠ NOTICE

› Remove the hook from the frame before closing the boot lid.

Removing and inserting

1. Raise the variable loading floor about 15 cm below the level of the boot lid and remove it.
2. Insert it in the reverse way.

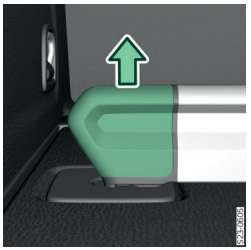
Luggage compartment partition

Removing and inserting

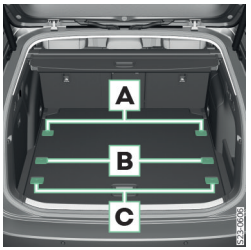
Removing and inserting the partition

The partition prevents the load from shifting.

Maximum partition load is 10 kg.



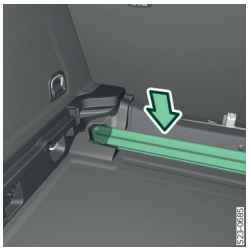
› To **remove** pull up the latch and remove the partition.



› To **insert** snap the partition into fixing points A, B or C.

Stowing the partition

1. Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position and lift it.
2. Insert the partition into the recess in the side panels.

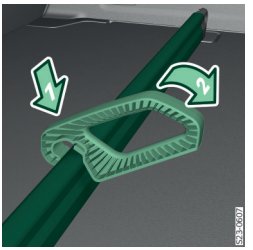


Removing and inserting the securing element

The securing element prevents the load from shifting.

The securing element is fastened to the partition on the variable loading floor.

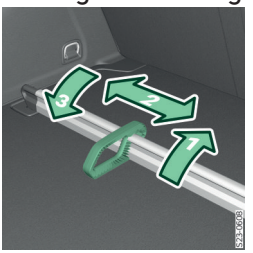
Maximum load on the securing element is 10 kg.



› To **insert**, put the securing element diagonally on the partition and push it down.

› **Removing** is done in the reverse way.

Moving the securing element



1 Releasing
2 Moving
3 Securing

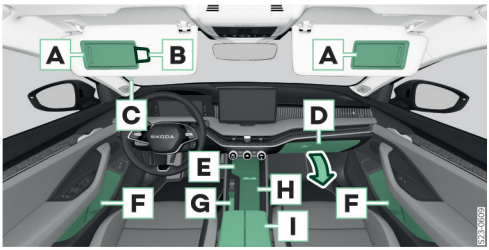
Stowing the securing element

1. Adjust the variable loading floor to the upper position and lift it.
2. Insert the securing element into the recess in the side panels.



Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make-up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Parking permit holder

D Storage compartment

The storage compartment contains a card holder, glasses holder, pencil holder and some space for coins.

Max. load 3 kg

› Press the button to open.

E Storage compartment:

The storage compartment has USB and Phone box inputs.

The USB inputs allow charging and data transfer.

› Pull the bar to open/close the storage compartment.

F Storage compartment

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Space for waste container

› Storage compartment for reflective vest

G Storage compartment

H Storage compartment

The storage compartment contains a beverage holder and space for key.

› Pull the bar to open the storage compartment.

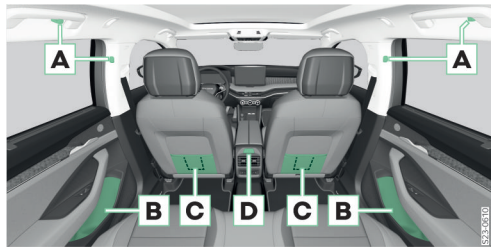
I Adjustable armrest with a storage compartment

The storage compartment contains a 12V socket, cable access, card holders, space for a tablet, removable storage box for glasses and removable storage compartment with space for screen cleaner.

› Press the button in the front part of the armrest to open.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook

Max. load 2 kg

B Storage compartment

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Storage compartment for reflective vest

C Storage pocket

› Storage pocket for a phone

D USB inputs

The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

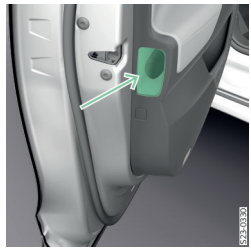
› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not put objects into the **C** storage pocked that may damage it.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

› Only insert a broom from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.

› Always insert the umbrella all the way into the storage compartment.

Phone box

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

› The phone may become warm; take care when removing it from the storage compartment.

› Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a hot metal object in the storage compartment, remove the phone and allow it to cool down in the storage compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to stored data!

› Do not leave identification cards, debit and credit cards with magnetic strips or chips in the phone's storage compartment.

Functionality

Phone box charges your phone wirelessly with up to 15 W of charging power.

It is located at the front of the centre console in the storage compartment and it can charge up to 2 phones at the same time.

Insert a phone not larger than the space for the phone into the storage box.

Charging indicator

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.

› – charging is switched off.

› The symbol is not displayed – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged / the function is not available.

Switching charging off/on

1. Press › on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select wireless charging for mobile devices.

Or:

1. Press in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen to switch charging on.
2. Select the item to switch on.

Recommendations for optimal function

› The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.

› Insert the phone without its protective case.

› Place the phone in the centre of the phone compartment.

Conditions

✓ Ignition is on.

✓ Phone supports the Qi standard.

✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system screen shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol is illuminated in the status bar.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Place the phone again in the centre of the phone compartment.

› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone compartment.

Cup holder

Overview

⚠ CAUTION

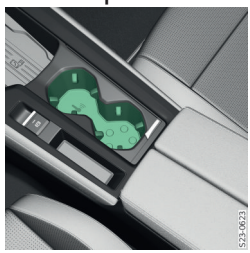
Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder

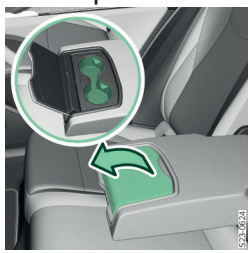


› Pull the bar to open.

The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

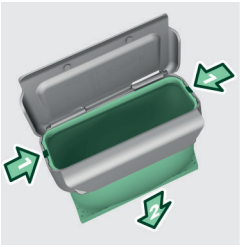
Rear cup holder



› To open, flip the lid.

Waste container

Replacing the bag





Blanket

Removing and inserting

The blanket is stored in a bag that you can attach to any of the following locations:

› On the headrest guide bars on the front seats.
› In the storage pockets on the back of the front seats

Tablet holder

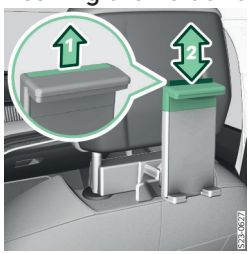
Settings

Tilting and rotating the holder behind the headrests





Resizing the holder behind the headrests



› Pull out the latch and slide the top of the holder to the desired position.

Reduce the empty holder to the minimum size so that it does not resonate while driving.

Tilting the holder in the rear armrest



1. To open, flip the lid.
2. Press the button and set the lid to the desired position.
3. Put the tablet on the inner support surface of the lid.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!
The tablet holder in the rear armrest must not be used while driving

Removing and inserting

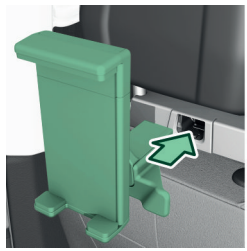
Inserting behind the headrest

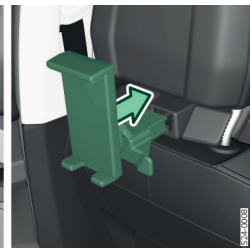




Option 1 / Option 2

› Place the unfastened adapter onto the front headrest guide bars and snap it in carefully.





Option 1 / Option 2

› Snap the bracket into the adapter.

Removing



Option 1 / Option 2

› Press the lock mechanisms and remove the holder.



Option 1 / Option 2

› Push the adapter and remove it.

Technical data and specifications

The holder behind the headrests is designed to hold a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and a maximum of 19.5 cm.

Maximum holder load is 0.75 kg.

Space for a tablet

Overview



› Secure the tablet with a rubber band.

12V power socket

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical system

› Only use the sockets to connect approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 W.

› When using two or more sockets at the same time, the total power consumption of the connected electrical accessories must not exceed 190 W.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

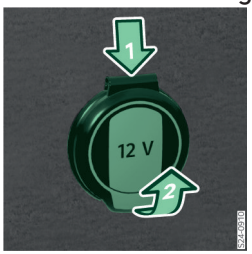
ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of discharging the 12V vehicle battery by connected appliances!

The sockets work even when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

12V socket in the luggage compartment



› Hold the cap at the hinge point with your finger and lift it open.

USB inputs

Overview



The USB inputs only allow charging with a charging power up to 45 W.

Operating conditions

✓ The Infotainment system on

Roof rack and the towing bracket

Roof rack

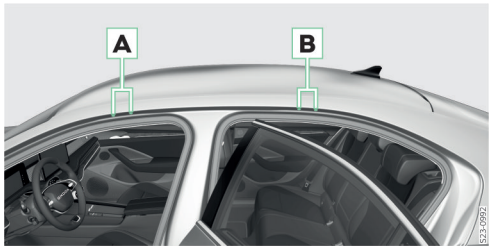
What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› When using the roof rack, close the sunroof.

Technical data and specifications

Maximum weight of the load including the roof rack is 100 kg.



Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can attach the transverse roof racks to mounting points A and B, or to the longitudinal roof rack.

› We recommend using roof racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Towing bracket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not tamper with the tow bar release switch when a trailer or other attachment is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could come loose.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the towing bracket with care.

› Do not stand near the centre of the rear bumper when the tow bar is swinging out.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket!

› When the towing bracket is not in use, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

ⓘ The car's lighting and registration plate must always be visible.

› When the towing bracket is not in use, swing the tow bar under the bumper. On vehicles with a removable towing bracket, remove the towing arm.

ⓘ The retrofitted non-removable towing bracket must not obscure the car's lighting and registration plate.

› Observe the generally applicable legislation in force in your country.

Retrofitting the towing bracket

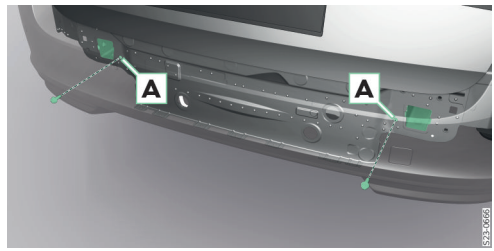
⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident, an incorrectly installed or unsuitable towing bracket may damage some parts of the vehicle, exacerbating the effects of the accident or causing fatal injuries.

› We recommend that you only use a towing bracket from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

› It is recommended that all related installation work is carried out by Škoda service partners.

› When retrofitting the towing bracket, the bodywork must be reinforced with bolts by a specialised garage.



A The hole for the reinforcement bolt

ⓘ NOTICE

If the entire towing bracket is removed from the vehicle, it must be replaced with the original rear bumper reinforcement, which includes the towing eye sleeve.

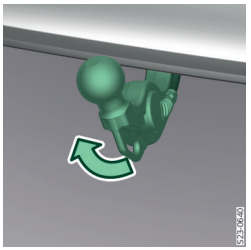
Swinging the tow bar in and out

Swinging the tow bar out



Option 1 / Option 2

› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will swing out. The ⊸ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Push the towing arm until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⊸ switch illuminates.

Swinging the tow bar in

⚠ NOTICE

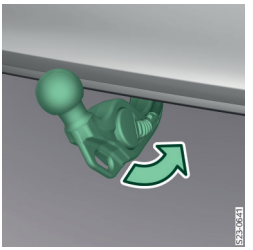
› No trailer or other accessories may be attached to the towing arm.

› There must be no plug or adapter plugged into the socket.



Option 1 / Option 2

› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will release. The ⊸ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Swing the tow bar back under the bumper until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⊸ switch illuminates.

Coupling and uncoupling the trailer or accessories

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

⚠ WARNING

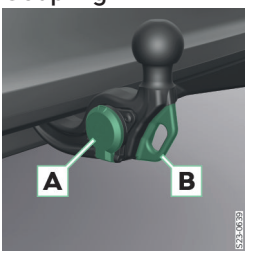
Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The towing bracket has an 13-pin socket . If the trailer has a 7-pin plug, use a reduction piece from Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Coupling



1. Swing the tow bar out.
2. Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.
3. Insert the trailer electrical plug into the socket A.
4. Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B. The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electronic system!
Total power consumption of all appliances connected to the trailer's electrical network may be no more than 350 W

Troubleshooting

Towing bracket fault

The indicator light in the switch is not lit or flashing, or the tow bar cannot be locked.

1. Do not use the towing bracket.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Unsecured tow bar

illuminated

› Secure the tow bar.

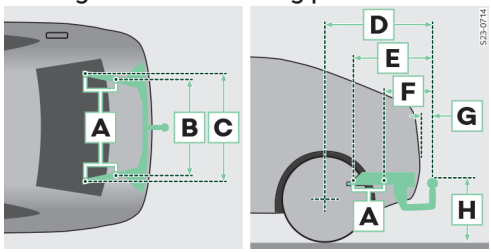
The tow bar has not come out

In extremely low outside temperatures, the tow bar may not fold out.

› If possible, park the vehicle in a warmer area, such as a garage.

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



- **A** Mounting points on the bodywork
- **B** Mounting points spacing
- **C** Mounting points spacing
- **D** Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball
- **E** Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
- **F** Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
- **G** Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)
- **H** Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

Value in mm	
B	1042.9
C	1047.9
D	1196.5
E	564.5
F	344.5
G	at least 65
H	350–420

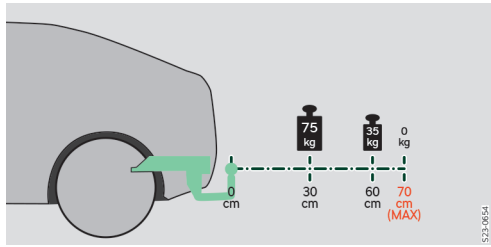
Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 90 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. In vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your Škoda Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing bracket, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories



When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

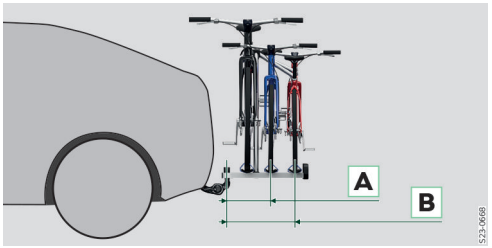
The total permissible weight of the mounted accessories, including the attached load, is max. 75 kg and varies depending on the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the tow ball.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the tow ball	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

Using the bicycle rack

Škoda Auto recommends that the number of bicycles loaded on the rack should be in accordance with the following table:

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball specific for the vehicle	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
from 75 kg	75 kg	3



Loading of the bicycle rack and maximum length to the bicycle racks

A Maximum length 500 mm when 2 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 55 kg

B Maximum length 700 mm when 3 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 75 kg

› We recommend using bicycle racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.
› To reduce air resistance and load, we recommend removing baskets, bags, child seats and batteries from the bicycles.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball.
› Do not exceed the permissible weight of the trailer or other accessories, e.g. bicycle rack.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket and the vehicle itself!
› When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maintenance and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster screen.

The service intervals are based on standard operating conditions.

Under adverse operating conditions, we recommend you to carry out some work before the next service date or between the specified service intervals.

In case of uncertainty about previous work before the scheduled service interval, contact a professional service.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service intervals, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the Škoda Auto warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

We recommend that you have the document about the performed service inspection printed out by a specialist garage.

Displaying the service due date

› In the Infotainment system, select > > > *Service*.

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed when the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Škoda Service Partner

All Škoda authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda genuine parts

We recommend using Škoda Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by Škoda Auto. These parts are fully compliant with Škoda Auto regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

Škoda Auto is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Škoda genuine accessories

We recommend that you use Škoda Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, Škoda

Auto is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a Škoda Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Engine blockheater

ⓘ NOTICE

A retrofitted engine blockheater on 2.0 litre diesel engines can cause engine corrosion.

- Do not install an engine block heater on diesel engines.

Component protection

Some electronic components of the car (e.g. the instrument cluster) are equipped with component protection at the factory, which limits the functionality of these components when they are installed illegally in another car (e.g. after theft) or when operated outside the car. Component protection allows a qualified service technician to install or replace components and control units.

If a component protection message appears on the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system screen, contact a qualified workshop. Škoda Auto recommends using the services of a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda Prepaid service

Applies to the Czech Republic

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use steam, aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents. Solvents can permanently damage airbag modules

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Microfibre Suedia / Textile

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
- Do not use leather conditioners, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover, etc. on microfibre Suedia or synthetic leather upholstery.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

- If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

- Leather and microfibre Suedia materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel!

- Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

› Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
› Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!
› Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
› Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts
› Do not dry clean the seat belts.
› Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Microfibre Suedia / Textile

› Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
› Remove fresh stains with a cotton or woollen cloth slightly moistened with water, or with a weak soapy solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When taking care of textiles and microfibre Suedia surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a special cleaning glove.

Plastic parts

› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system
› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents » *page 189*designed for this purpose.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Instrument cluster screen

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Head-up display

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)].

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

WARNING

Risk of accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel, AdBlue® etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

NOTICE

AdBlue® damages some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.
› Wash the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
› Remove the dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- Do not treat matte painted parts with polish or hard wax.
- Do not polish foils.
- It is recommended to treat door seals and window guides with appropriate products from Škoda original accessories intended for this purpose. These ensure that the protective paint layer on the seals and window guides is not damaged.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

- Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the rod of the roof antenna, etc.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
- If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle needs to move freely in the car wash, the following conditions must be met before entering:

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Automatic gearbox selector lever in **N** mode
- ✓ Electric parking brake is switched off
- ✓ Deactivated Auto Hold function

ⓘ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

- Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with wax protection

- Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Washing with a pressure washer

ⓘ NOTICE

- Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.
- Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  - Films
  - Lock cylinders
  - Gaps on the vehicle
  - Towing bracket socket
  - Tilting towing arm
  - Camera lenses and sensors
  - Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Hand washing

- Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights[1)].
- Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
- Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not use any solvent-based cleaners, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects on the wiper blades as they will damage the graphite layer of the blades during cleaning.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60°C.

After hand washing

- Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Vehicle paint
› Protect the paint at least twice a year with hard wax.
› Use a polish for paint that has turned matte.

Films
Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

› sunlight
› moisture
› air pollution
› stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces
Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.
› We then recommend treating the spot with hard wax.

Underseal
The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels
› After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Car jack
› If necessary, apply a suitable grease to the moving parts.

Towing bracket
› If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2) specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Concise Declaration of Conformity

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by law.



Vehicle identification data

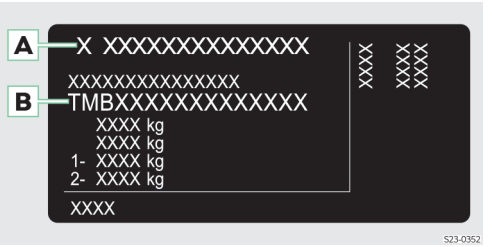
Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

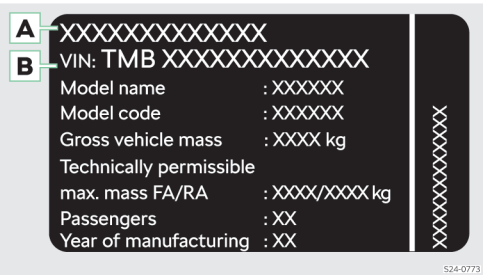
› on the right of the engine compartment

› on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner

› on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate – Variant 1



Type plate – Variant 2

A Vehicle manufacturer

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN screen

VIN can be displayed in the Infotainment system under > > > *Service*.

Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Stickers and labels

Overview

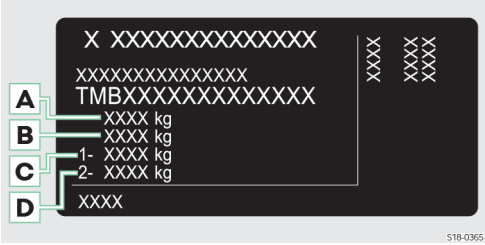
From the factory, stickers and labels with important information for the operation of the car are placed on the engine compartment and on some parts of the vehicle.

› Never remove stickers and labels. They should remain legible.

Axle weights and loads

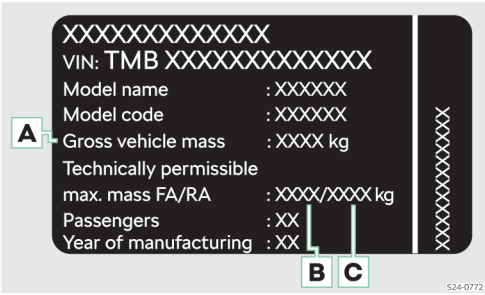
Maximum permissible weights are listed on the type plate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar.



Type plate – Variant 1

- **A** Permissible total weight
- **B** Permissible total weight of the loaded combination of vehicles, if the vehicle is used for towing
- **C** Maximum permissible front axle load
- **D** Maximum permissible rear axle load



Type plate – Variant 2

- **A** Permissible total weight
- **B** Maximum permissible front axle load
- **C** Maximum permissible rear axle load

Permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles

The indicated value is valid for altitudes up to 1,000 m above see level.

As the altitude increases, the engine power decreases and the car's climbing ability decreases.

Therefore, the permissible total weight of the combined vehicle must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1000 m altitude.

The permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles is the sum of the weight of the loaded vehicle and the weight of the loaded trailer.

Payloads

Use the difference between the permissible total weight of the vehicle and the operating weight to find the approximate maximum payload weight.

The payload includes the following components:

- The weight of the passengers
- The weight of all luggage and other cargo
- The weight of the load on the roof, including the weight of the roof racks
- The weight of the equipment excluded from the operating weight
- Vertical ball head load when using a towing device » *page 195*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes the driver's weight of 75 kg, the weight of the operating fluids and the onboard tool kit and the fuel tank filled to a minimum of 90 %.

Operating weight

Engine type	Operating weight (kg)	
	Superb	Superb Combi
1.5 l/110 kW TSI mHEV	1560	1576
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	1610	1625
2.0 l/150 kW TSI	1631	1646
2.0 l/195 kW TSI	1726	1741
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	1666	1682
2.0 l/142 kW TDI CR	1739	1754

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Superb	Superb Combi
Vehicle height at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	1468–1496	1470–1497
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1941	1941
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2090	2090
Vehicle clearance at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	126–153	127–154
Vehicle length	4912	4902

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, further referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, further referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which the accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The vehicle's speed

The recorded data allows how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident to be analysed. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Assistant for keeping your lane (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age and location of the accident is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect the EDR content to other data sources to help identify the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment used to read the EDR data.

Škoda Auto will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions relating to personal data protection.

To view the current personal data protection statement, use the following link or load the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 25. 5. 2017 No. 355.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine.

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA company declares that the radio equipment type 013854 complies with the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available on the website at the following address: **http://www.hella.com/vw**.

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeoman Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial Škoda

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Taiwan

Radio equipment – Declaration of Conformity

Without a permit granted by the Directorate General of Telecommunications (DGT), no company, firm or user may change the frequency, increase the transmitting power or alter the original characteristics, functions or performance of an approved low-power radio frequency device. Low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect the safety of aircraft or interfere with legal communications. If it does, the user must immediately stop operating the equipment until the interference is removed. Legal communication means radio communication operated in accordance with the Telecommunications Act. Radio frequency equipment with low transmitting power has to be sensitive to interference caused by legal communication or devices transmitting radio waves in the ISM bands.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the Škoda website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market.
- Information on the Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 25 . 5. 2017 No. 355.
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers.

To view the information, use the following link or load the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

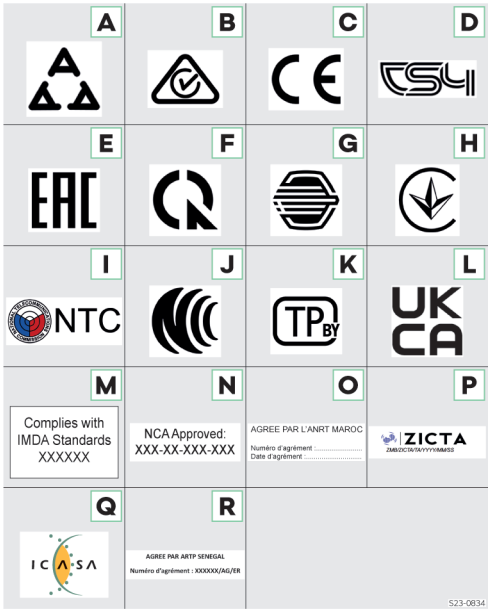
1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.



- **A** Serbia
- **B** Australia and New Zealand
- **C** Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- **D** Armenia
- **E** Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
- **F** Vietnam
- **G** Mongolia
- **H** Ukraine
- **I** Philippines
- **J** Taiwan
- **K** Belarus
- **L** Great Britain
- **M** Singapore
- **N** Ghana
- **O** Morocco
- **P** Zambia
- **Q** South Africa
- **R** Senegal



United Arab Emirates

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Central locking remote control key	433.05–434.79 MHz	10 mW
	6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2–868.4 MHz	25 mW
	868.7–869.2 MHz	24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2–868.4 MHz	25 mW
	868.7–869.2 MHz	24 mW
Keyless car locking	125 kHz	76 dBµA/m
		89 dBµA/m
The Infotainment system	MW (AM): 531–1602 kHz	–
	FM: 87.5–108 MHz	–
	DAB: (BAND III): 174.928–239.2 MHz	10 dBm
	Bluetooth: 2402–2480 MHz	20 mW
	Wi-Fi: 2402–2482 MHz	15 dBm
	Wi-Fi: 5170–5250 MHz	15 dBm
	Wi-Fi: 5735–5875 MHz	15 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	128 kHz	15 W
NFC	13.56 MHz	100 mW

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76–77 GHz	23.38 dBm
	24.050–24.25 GHz	<20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52–1.7 MHz	–
	FM: 87–108 MHz	–
	DAB: 174–240 MHz	–
	GNSS: 1559.052–1605.375 MHz	–
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W
	GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz)	UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W
	WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	
	WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz)	LTE: 23 dBm/ 0.2 W
	LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	
	LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620–2690 MHz)	
	LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	
	LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791–821 MHz)	
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
	Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµ A/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Virtual cockpit: FPK Entry	125 kHz	-2.5 dBµ A/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Collection and processing of scrap cars

Ecological disposal

As the car contains a range of potentially hazardous substances, it must be disposed of at the end of its life in accordance with local legislation. Hand over the car for environmental disposal only to an authorised body. For more information, please contact any Škoda Partner.

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end user, you have a legal obligation to take used batteries to a collection point.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

- Used batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner in EU member states and other countries.
- High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol.

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

- Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
- You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Product recycling

The following instructions apply to France.



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of items:

- Car keys
- Remote control of independent heating and ventilation
- Compressor
- Charging cable
- Card with mobile key



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of item:

- Fire extinguisher



The recycling instructions in the image apply to documents, packaging or bags for the following items:

- Owner's manual
- Car first aid kit
- Fire extinguisher
- Compressor
- Charging cables
- Charging socket and sealing cap
- Tool kit
- Tyre repair kit
- Warning triangle
- Reflective vest
- Tool bag

Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Some terms in this Manual have an ® or a ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

- **"AdBlue®"** is a registered VDA trademark.
- **"Android Auto™"** is a registered trademark of theGoogle Inc company.
- **"Apple CarPlay™", "Siri®"** are registered trademarks of the Apple Inc company.
- **"Bluetooth®"** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc company.
- **"HDMI, logo HDMI"** are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- **"Windows®"** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Preparation for breathalyser

The vehicle is equipped with a preparatory kit for the installation of an alcohol tester LIN with bus communication corresponding to EU 2019/2144 standard.

Have the alcohol tester installed by a specialist garage.

Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your Škoda Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new Škoda vehicle, Škoda Genuine Parts and Škoda Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible Škoda Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is duly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN) in the "Vehicle handover documentation" section in this Owner's Manual.

Škoda Warranty for new vehicles

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, Škoda Partners provide you with the Škoda new vehicle warranty (hereinafter referred to as the "Škoda Warranty") under the following terms and conditions.

Under the Škoda Warranty, Škoda Partners provide the following benefits[1)]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty.

  In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the Škoda Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the Škoda Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a Škoda Partner to the first buyer who is not a Škoda Partner[2)].

Škoda Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any Škoda Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the Škoda Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the defective parts. The Škoda authorised workshop will determine the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the Škoda authorised workshop.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The Škoda Warranty can be claimed at any Škoda authorised workshop. The defect must be notified with-

---

1) In some countries, Škoda Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the Škoda Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, refer to the purchase contract with your Škoda Partner or the accompanying documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the Škoda Warranty can only be exercised with Škoda Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

in the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the Škoda Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of Škoda Auto, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the Škoda Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to an expert servicing workshop or was not properly rectified without undue delay.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, 12V vehicle battery, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by Škoda Auto (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, including but not limited to ignoring the control lights and warning messages of the car or failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This Škoda Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the Škoda Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the vehicle.

Škoda Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the Škoda authorised workshop, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the Škoda authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the Škoda Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the Škoda Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your Škoda Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional Škoda Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a Škoda Extended Warranty with your new vehicle, Škoda Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

the Škoda Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the Škoda Extended Warranty, the conditions of the Škoda Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the Škoda Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the Škoda authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion are unaffected by the Škoda Extended Warranty.

The Škoda Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the Škoda Extended Warranty, contact your Škoda Partner.

ⓘ The Škoda Mobility Guarantee and the Škoda Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

Engine specifications

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine mHEV

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	225	222
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.2	9.3

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	140/4200–6500	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1400–4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	244	240
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.8	7.8

2.0 l/150 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	150/4500–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1500–4400	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	248	232
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.4	7.4

2.0 l/195 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	195/5000–6500	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1650–4350	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	250	250
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	5.6	5.7

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/3000–4200	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	360/1600–2750	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	225	222
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.2	9.3

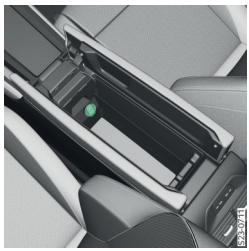
2.0 l/142 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	142/3500–4200	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1750–3250	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Superb	Superb Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	238	230
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.5	7.6

Simply Clever

12V power socket

Overview





For further details, see » page 192.

Option 1



Option 2

Automatic function of luggage compartment roll-up cover

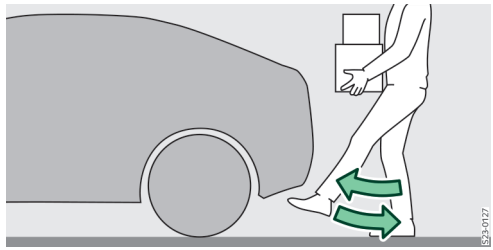
Overview

If the vehicle is equipped with an electrically operated boot lid, the roll-up cover will automatically retract / extend when the lid is opened/closed.

For further details, see » page 185.

Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation

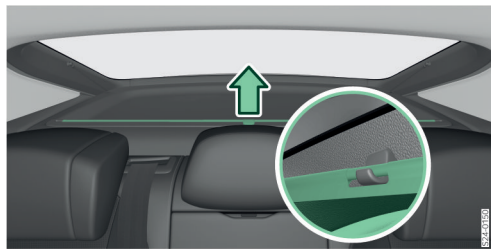
Overview



For further details, see » page 41.

Rear window shade

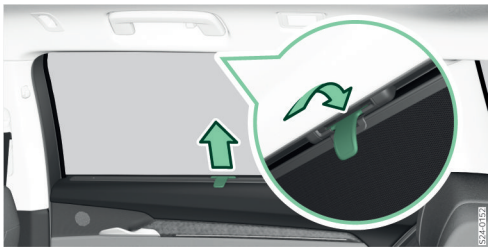
Overview



For further details, see » page 38.

Rear door window shades

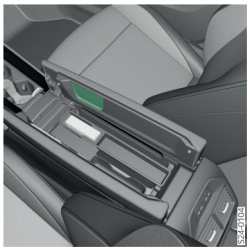
Overview



For further details, see » page 38.

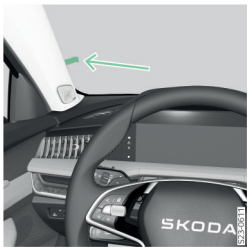
Card holder on the arm rest

Overview



Parking permit holder

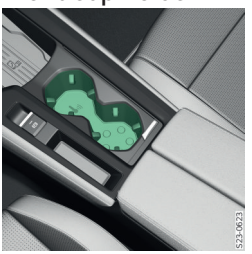
Overview



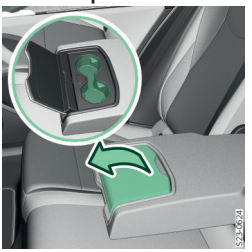
Cup holder

Overview

Front cup holder



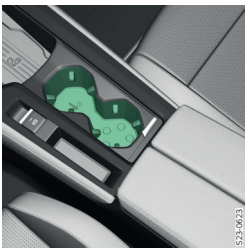
Rear cup holder



For further details, see » page 190.

Cup holder with the Easy Open function

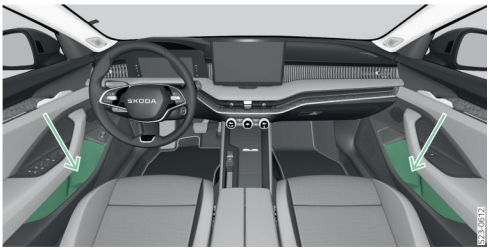
Overview



For further details, see » page 190.

The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment

Overview



The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment

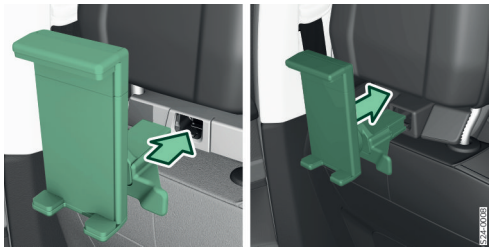
Overview



The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

Tablet holder

Overview

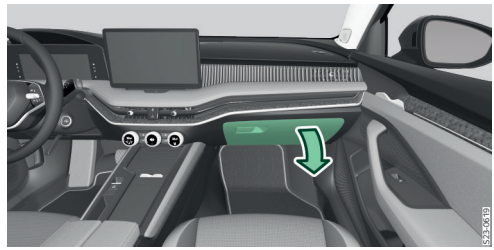


Option 1 / Option 2

For further details, see » *page 191*.

Pencil holder

Overview



Net partition

Overview



For further details, see » *page 185*.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Overview

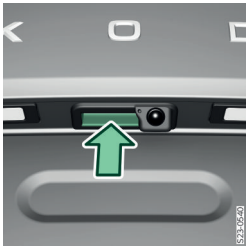


For further details, see » *page 35*.

Boot lid – with electric operation

Overview

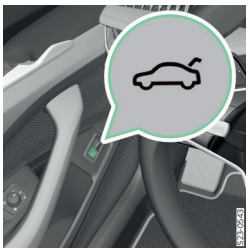
The lid handle



The button in the lid



The button in the door



The button on the key



For further details, see » *page 40*.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar

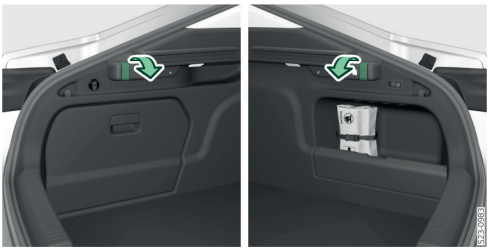
Overview



The maximum hook load is 2 kg.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

Overview



Option 1



Option 2

The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

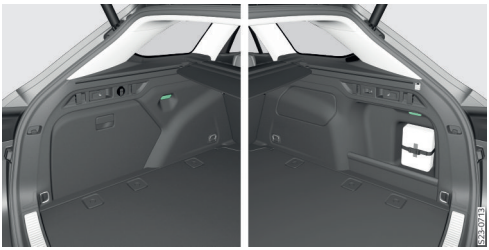
Luggage compartment lights

Overview

Luggage compartment lights

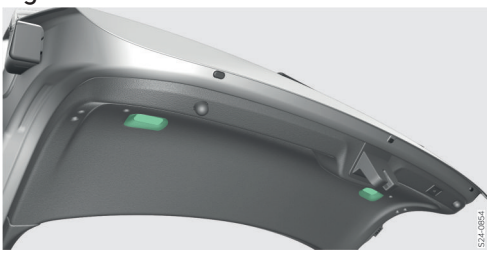


Option 1



Option 2

Lights on the boot lid



Option 1



Option 2

Rear armrest

Overview



The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

For further details, see » *page 46*.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

Overview



For further details, see » *page 187*.

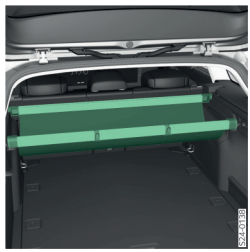
Multifunction pocket

Overview



For further details, see » *page 183*.

Option 1



Option 2

Multifunction (Smart Dials) controls

Overview



For further details, see » page 86.

Protection against refuelling with incorrect fuel

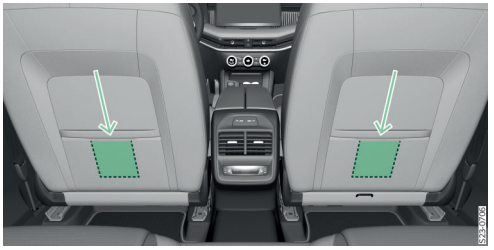
Overview

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a protection against misfuelling in the filler neck of the fuel tank.

For further details, see » page 164.

Phone pocket

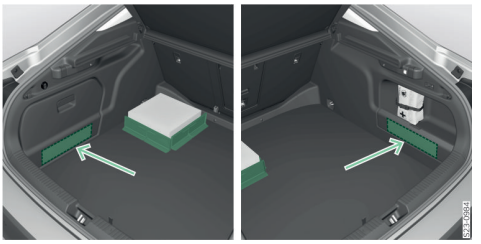
Overview



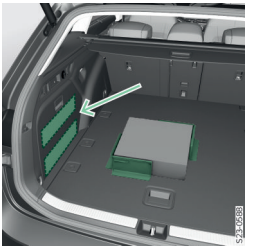
For further details, see » page 189.

Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area

Overview



Option 1



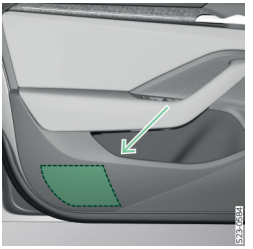
Option 2

The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

For further details, see » page 182.

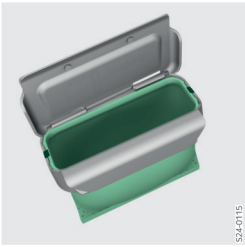
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

Overview



Waste container

Overview



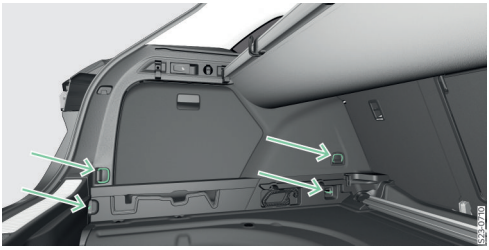
For further details, see » page 191.

Lashing eyes for securing load in the luggage compartment

Overview



Option 1



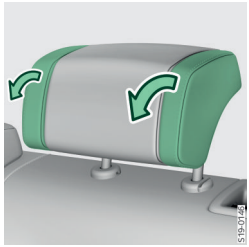
Option 2

Maximum load for each lashing eye is 50 kg.

For further details, see » page 182.

Sleep package

Overview



The package includes adjustable headrest parts and a bag with a blanket.

For further details, see » page 45, » page 191.

Rear seat belt parking position

Overview



Personalisation

Overview

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the car's personalised functions to an active Škoda ID user account. Every change to the function settings is automatically saved when the ignition is switched off if the car is within the range of the contractual mobile network.

For further details, see » page 119.

Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats

Overview



For further details, see » page 185.

Phone box

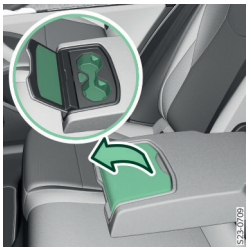
Overview



For further details, see » page 190.

Armrest with longitudinal adjustment and a cup and tablet holder

Overview



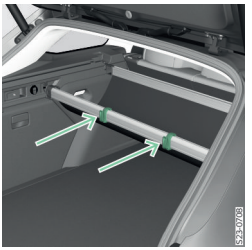
For further details, see » page 190, » page 191.

Sliding hooks for bags on multifunction pocket

Overview



Option 1

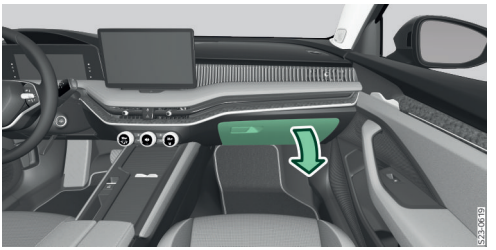


Option 2

For further details, see » page 182.

Storage space for a card, coins and glasses

Overview



Space for a tablet

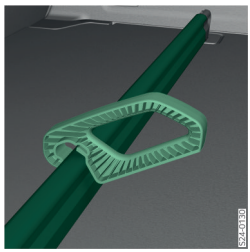
Overview



For further details, see » page 192.

Luggage compartment partition

Overview



For further details, see » page 188.

QR–code in the luggage compartment

Overview



After the QR–code is scanned, a website with video tutorials for selected features of the equipment in the luggage compartment will be displayed.

For further details, see » page 181.

Option 1



Option 2

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

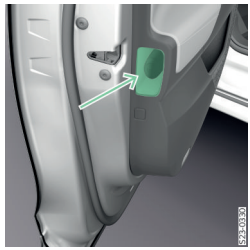
Overview



For further details, see » page 185.

Storage compartment for umbrella

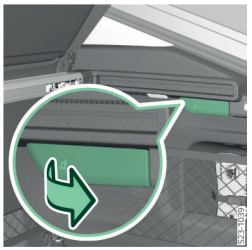
Overview



For further details, see » page 189.

Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space

Overview



Option 1



Option 2

For further details, see » page 44.

SmartLink

Overview

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

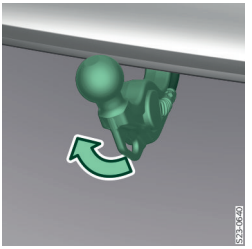
For further details, see » page 105.

Towing bracket

Overview



Option 1 / Option 2



For further details, see » page 194.

Stowing the roll-up cover

Overview



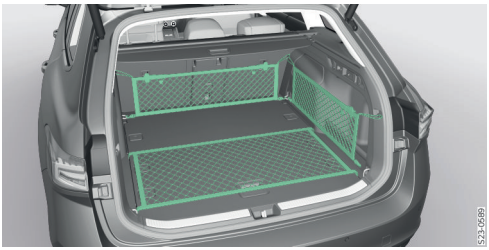
For further details, see » page 186.

Securing nets

Overview



Option 1

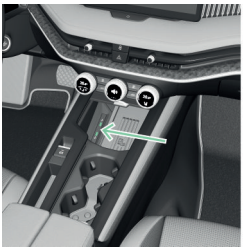


Option 2

For further details, see » *page 183*.

USB inputs

Overview



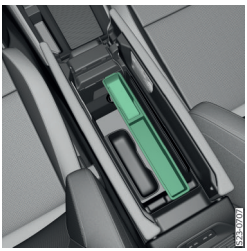




For further details, see » *page 192*.

Removable storage box

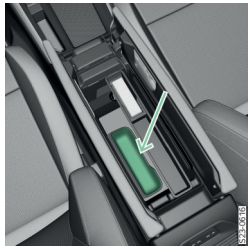
Overview

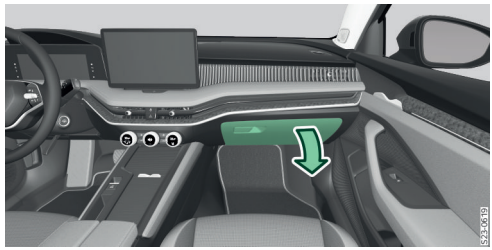


Removable glasses holder

Overview

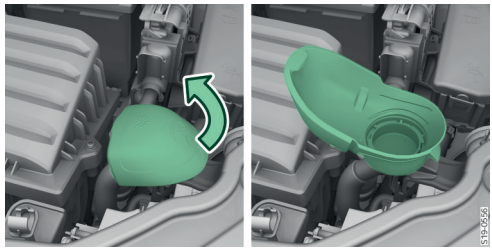
Location variants





Washer fluid filler cap

Overview



For further details, see » *page 68*.

Heaters

Overview

The function allows you to simultaneously switch on the heating of some of the following features:

- Windscreen
- Rear window
- Steering wheel
- Seats

For further details, see » *page 70*.

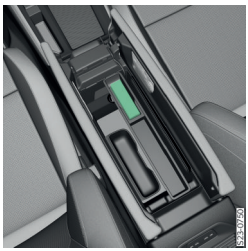
Storage space under the variable loading floor

Overview



Display cleaner

Overview



Škoda Connect

Overview

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, or a link to downloading MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following QR–code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

For further details, see ***» page 115***.

Ice scraper

Overview



Index

Numbers and symbols

12V battery
Fault 167
12V vehicle battery 166
Charging 166
Checking the condition 166
Disconnecting and connecting 167
Indicator lights 167
Protection against discharge 166
Safety 23
see 12V vehicle battery 166

A

ABS 133
ACC 138
interrupting the cruise control 139
setting the distance 139
START-STOP system 138
Accident
Data recorder 204
Accident data recorder 204
Acid 166
Adaptive chassis 126
Adaptive Cruise Control 138
Adaptive headlights 63
AdBlue 161
Checking 161
indicator light 162
Safety 22
standard 161
tank capacity 162
Topping up 161
Air Care 70
Air conditioning system
see Climatronic 70
Airbag 57
Activation 57
Deactivating airbags 58
Fault 58
Location 57
Safety 57
Turning off the passenger front airbag 58
Airbag switch 58
Signalling 58
Alarm 33
trailer 33
All-season tyres 173
Android Auto
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Apple CarPlay
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Armrest
Front 46
Rear 46
Assist systems
Driving systems 133
Safety 25
Assistance systems
Parking systems 147
Assistant for keeping your lane
see Lane Assist 140
Auto Hold 130
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 134
Automatic emergency braking 147
Automatic gearbox 124
Manual changing gears with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 125
Automatic power regeneration assistant
see Eco Assist 146

B

Background lighting 66
Backrest
Opening for ski bag 46
Battery
48V battery 131
Blanket 191
Bonnet 157
Boot
Fasteners 182
Rigid boot cover 185
Securing nets 183
Boot lid 40
Automatic locking 39
Contactless operation 40
Manual operation 39
Manual release 41
Troubleshooting 40
Brake fluid 129
Safety 22
Brake pads 129
Brakes 129
Breakdown call 121

C

Car seat
see Child seat 51
Cargo elements 182
Central locking 30
SAFE function 30
Central locking button 31
Centre console 16
Checking the vehicle before the journey 23
Child lock 35
Child seat 51
Fastened with a safety belt 53
Grouping 53
i-Size 55
ISOFIX 53, 56
Recommended child seats 53
Securing children properly 24
TOP TETHER 56
Types of fasteners 56
Child seats
In the front passenger seat 52
Cleaning the vehicle
Exterior 199
Instructions for cleaning the exterior 200
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 199
Interior 198
Climatronic 70
Display at the back of the central console 71
Setting up air conditioning 71
Coasting
see Driving in neutral 125
Coming Home 64
Coming Home, Leaving Home
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Compartments 189
Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation 41
Control centre
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Convenience turn signal 62
Coolant 159
Checking 160
Checking and topping up 159
Safety 22
see Air Conditioning 70
Specification 159
Temperature gauge 159
Troubleshooting 160
Cooling system 71
Crew Protect Assist
see Proactive Crew Protection 144
Cruise control
Indicator light 136
Cruise control system 136
Cup holder 190
Cyber security 96

D

Data connection 116
Daytime running lights 61
Automatic switching on/off 61
DCC 126
Diesel
Refuelling 164
Diesel fuel 164
Conditions for refuelling 164
Fuel tank capacity 165
Misfuelling protection 164
Prescribed fuel 165
Standards 164
Troubleshooting 164
Digital assistant Laura 84
Digital instrument cluster
see Virtual cockpit 77
Doors
Opening/closing 35
Driver Alert
see Fatigue detection 145
Driver's seat 15
Driving data 78
Resetting 79
Driving in neutral 125
Driving modes 126
Comfort 126
Eco 126
Individual 126
Normal 126
Sport 126
Driving with a trailer 127
Safety 25
Trailer stability assist 133
DSR 133
Dynamic cornering light
Activation/deactivation 64
Dynamic Light Assist
see Headlight Assist 64

E

Earth point 168
eBKV 133
Eco Assist 146
Economical driving style 126
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
EDS 133
Electric window control 36
Force limiter 36
Electric window operation
Activation 37
Operation 36
Troubleshooting 37
Electrical parking brake 129
Emergency
Emergency call 26
Using the jump start cables 167

What to do after an accident 28
What to do in the event of a fire 28
Emergency Assist 145
see Emergency situations assistant 145
Emergency calls 26
Emergency equipment 181
Jack 182
Tool kit 182
Emergency wheel
Safe driving 25
Engine compartment 16
Bonnet 157
Coolant 159
Engine oil 158
Safety 22
Engine number 202
Engine oil 158
Changing 158
Indicator light 159
Refilling 158
Safety 22
Specification 157
Engine specifications
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
EPC 160
ESC 133
ESC Sport 133, 134
Exhaust gas control system 161
Explanations 6
Exterior mirrors 48

F

Fasteners in the boot 182
Fatigue detection 145
Fault in the engine control system 160
Fire extinguisher 182
First aid kit 181
Fog lights
Rear 63
Fogging 72
Force limiter 37
Front Assist 134
Distance warning 134
Front seats
Electrically controlled 42
Manually controlled 42
With partial electrical operation 42
Front vehicle area 13
Fuel
Diesel fuel 164
Petrol 162
Fuel filler flap 161
Fuel filter 161
Fuel tank
Opening the fuel filler flap 161
Fuel tank capacity
Diesel fuel 165
Petrol 163
Fuses 169
in the dash panel 169
In the engine compartment 170
Replacement 169

H

Hazard warning lights 63
Head-up screen 78
Headlight Assistant 64
Headlight range 60
Headlights
Dynamic cornering light 63
Range control 60
Headrests 45
Heating function 70
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 133
High beam 62
Headlight Assist 64
High beam assistant 64
Hill Hold Control 133
Hooks
In the boot 182
In the interior 189

I

i-Size 55
Ice scraper 14
Images
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Immobiliser 123
Inattention detection 145
Independent auxiliary heating and ventilation 72
Replacing the battery in the remote control 74
Troubleshooting 73
Indicator lights
Introduction 17
Overview 17
Information calls 121
Infotainment Online 122
Instrument cluster
Virtual cockpit 77
Interior background lighting 66
Interior equipment
12V socket 181, 189, 192
Card holder 189
Coat hooks 189
Cup holder 190
Glasses holder 189
Make-up mirror 189
Parking permit holder 189
Screen cleaner 189
Space for a key 189
Space for a tablet 189, 192
Storage compartment for umbrella 189
Storage compartments 189
Storage pockets 189

Tablet holder 191
Ticket holder 189
Interior lighting 65
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Interior mirror 48
ISOFIX 56
Placement in the seat 53
Retaining rings 56

J

Jump start cables 168

K

KESSY
see Keyless locking 32
Key 29
Replacing the battery 29
Keyless locking (KESSY) 32
Locking when leaving the car 32
Unlocking when the key is close to the car 32
Kick-down 125

L

Labels
Child seat 52
Coolant in the air conditioning system 70
Specified tyre pressure values 178
Lane Assist 140
Lane change assistant
see Side Assist 142
Launch-control 125
Leaving Home 64
Lever
Headlight Assist 65
High beam 62
Light assist 64
Turn signal 62
Wipers and washers 67
Liability for faults
see Warranty 209
Lifting the vehicle 175
Light Assist
see the High Beam Assistant 64
Light switch 60
Lighting
Background 66
Exterior 60
Interior 65
Lights 60
Automatic switching on/off 61
Bad weather lights 62
Control 60
Corner function 63
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 61
Dynamic cornering light 63
Hazard warning lights 63
Headlight Assist 64
Headlight flasher 62
Headlight range control 60
High beam 62
Indicator light 62
Parking lights 63
Rear fog light 63
Troubleshooting 61
Turn signal 62
Limiter
see Speed limiter 135
Load distribution 127
Locking 30, 32
Low beam 61
Luggage compartment 181
12V power socket 181
Multifunction pocket 183
Net partition 185
Rear seat backrest folding lever 181
Roll-up cover 185
Storage boxes 181
towing bracket switch 181
Transporting objects safely 25
Variable loading floor 187
Luggage compartment equipment 181
Luggage compartment partition 188

M

Massage function of the seat
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
MATRIX headlights
see Headlight Assist 64
MCB 133
Media 93
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Mirrors
see Exterior mirrors 48
see Interior mirror 48
Mobile devices management 96
Monitoring the surroundings
see Top View 149
MSR 133
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 133
Multifunction controls (Smart Dials) 71, 86
Multifunction pocket 183

N

Navigation 109
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Net partition 185
Nets 183
New vehicle or new parts 21
Notes on starting 123

O

Oil
see Engine oil 158

On-demand functions 122
Online services
availability 115
Breakdown call 121
Information calls 121
MyŠkoda application 116
Over-the-Air update 119
Personalisation 119
Planning a service visit 121
Shop 120
Škoda Connect 115
Škoda Connect services 122
Škoda Connect services user registration and activation 116
User management 117
Vehicle's health card 121
Opening in the backrest 46

P

Park Assist with memory function
Troubleshooting 155
Park assistant with memory function 154
Park Pilot
see Parking aid 147
Parking
Parking aid 147
Rear Traffic Alert. 150
Rear view camera 148
Safe stopping of the vehicle 26
Parking aid 147
Parking assist systems 147
Parking brake 129
see Electrical parking brake 129
Parking lights 61, 63
Passenger front airbag switch 16
Switch fault 59
Passenger seat 16
Pedestrian detection 135
Personal data 117, 204
Personalisation 119
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Petrol 162
Conditions for refuelling 163
Fuel tank capacity 163
Refilling 163
Refuelling with other fuel 163
Specified petrol 162
Standards 162
Phone 98
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Phone box 190
Planning a service visit 121
Plates
12V vehicle battery 166
Engine oil 157
Engine space 22
Fuel type 163, 165
Head rests 45
Type plate 202, 203
Power assisted steering 47
Predictive adaptive Cruise Control 138

R

Radio
DAB radio 89
FM radio 87
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
WEB radio and Podcasts 91
Radio systems in the vehicle 204
Rear armrest
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Rear fog light 63
Rear seats
Folding down 44
Rear Traffic Alert 150
Rear vehicle area 14
Rear view camera 148
Operation 148
Recirculated air mode 71
Recycling 208
Refilling
Coolant 159
Engine oil 158
Petrol 163
Windscreen washer fluid 68
Reflective vest 181
Refuelling
Diesel fuel 164
Remote access 122
Remote control of the independent auxiliary heating and ventilation
Replacing the battery 74
Remotely controlled parking 155
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 209
Rigid boot cover 185
Roll-up luggage compartment cover 185
Roof rack 193
Fixing roof racks 193
Roof loading 193
Safe driving 25

S

SAFE – function 30
Safe driving 25
Safety
Before driving 21
Child seat 24
Climatic conditions 26
Driving through water 25
Emergency call 26
Exiting the vehicle 26
Indicator lights 25
New vehicle or new parts 21
Seat belt webbing 24

Sensors and cameras 22
Sitting correctly 23
Transporting loads and objects 25
Vehicle adjustments 21
What to do after an accident 28
What to do in the event of a fire 28
Scheduling a service visit
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
SEAL tyres 173
Seat belts 50
Adjusting the height 51
Automatic belt retractor 50
Belt tensioners 50
Blocked belt retractor 51
Correct webbing 24
Fastening and unfastening 51
reversible belt tensioners 50
Safety 50
Status screen 50
Seat heating 75
Seat massage function 44
Seat memory 43
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Seat ventilation 75
Seats 42
Folding down 44
Heating 75
ISOFIX 56
Seat memory 43
Sitting safely 23
TOP TETHER 56
Ventilation 75
Service events 197
Displaying the due date 197
Intervals 197
Resetting information 197
Service work 197
Setting personal data protection 117
Setting the tyre pressure 178
Shades
Electrical operation of the sunshade 38
Shop 120
Side Assist 142
Side vehicle area 13
Sidelights
see Parking lights 63
Škoda Connect services
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Škoda Prepaid service 198
Smart Dials 71, 86
Smart parking assistant 152
Troubleshooting 153
SmartLink 105
Android Auto 106
Apple CarPlay 107
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Snow chains 173
Sockets
12V socket 192
Safety 23
Space for a tablet 192
Spare wheel
Safe driving 25
Speed limiter 135
Indicator light 135
Speed limiter with predictive control 135
START-STOP 124
Starter button 123
Starting 123
Starting the vehicle
Using the jump start cables 167
Steering column lock 47
Steering wheel 47
Buttons 47, 77
Correct position 24
Heating 76
Manual changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 125
Steering wheel heating 76
Stopping the engine 123
Sunroof 37
Electrical operation of the sunshade 38
Operation 37
Sunshades 38
Operating the rear windows shades 38
Supported media files
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Supported media sources
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Switching low beam on automatically 61
Switching off passenger front airbag 58
Switching off the passenger front airbag
Signalling 58
System and Infotainment updates
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
System update 119

T

Tablet holder 191
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
TCS 133
Technical data and specifications 202
Vehicle dimensions 204
Temporary spare wheel 174
The boot lid
Setting the top position 40
The Infotainment system
Applications menu 81
Configuration wizard 81
Control centre 84
HOME menu 80
Keypad 83
Laura application 84
Overview 80
Preferred applications 81
Preferred functions 80

Restarting 82
Screen overview 83
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Setting 82
Setting the sound 82
System update 82
The main menu 81
The Infotainment system keypad
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
The Infotainment system screen
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Tips for economical driving 126
Tiptronic 125
Tool kit 182
TOP TETHER 56
Mounting retaining rings 56
Top View 149
Topping up
AdBlue 161
Tow rope 128
Towing bracket 193
Swinging the tow bar in and out 194
Tow bar loading 195
Troubleshooting 195
Towing eye 128
Towing the vehicle 128
Traffic accident
Emergency call 26
What to do after an accident 28
Traffic sign recognition 143
Trailer 127
alarm 33
Coupling and uncoupling 194
Permissible weight 127
Safe driving 25
Trailer Assist 151, 152
Trailer manoeuvring assistant
see Trailer Assist 151
Trailer stabilization system 133
Transport
Towing bracket 193
Transporting objects safely 25
Transporting children 24
Transporting items
Roof rack 193
Travel Assist 141
Travel assistance
see Travel Assist 141
Trays 189
TSA
see Trailer stability assist 133
Turn signal 62
Type plate 202
Tyre pressure monitor 178
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant 178
Tyres 172, 173
Overview of labelling 172
Pressure 177, 178
Puncture repair kit 177
Tread wear indicator 172
tyre pressure gauge 182
Tyre pressure monitor 178

U

Umbrella 189
Undisclosed vehicle data 117
Unlocking 30, 32
USB 189
User management 117

V

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 187
Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 197
Safety 21
Vehicle dimensions 204
Vehicle heath card 121
Vehicle height 204
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 202
Vehicle length 204
Vehicle status 79
Vehicle width 204
Vehicle's health card
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Vest
see Reflective vest 181
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 202
Virtual cockpit 77
Voice control 84
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7

W

Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle 150
Warning triangle 181
Warranty 209
Mobility Warranty 209
New vehicle warranty 209
Optional Extended Warranty 209
Rights arising from defective performance 209
Washer fluid
Low level 68
Washers
see Wipers and washers 67
Washing in a car wash 199
Washing with a pressure washer 199
Waste container 191
Water in fuel filter 161
Weight 203
Wheels 172
Bolt cover caps 179
Flat tyre 173
Full-width wheel trim 179

Full-width wheel trim Aero 179
Overview of tyre labelling 172
Pressure change 173
Replacing 174, 175
snow chains 173
Temporary spare wheel 174
Tread wear indicator 172
Tyre pressure 177, 178
Tyre pressure monitor 178
Wi-Fi 103
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 7
Windows 36
Heating 74
Windows heating 74
Windscreen washer fluid
How to refill the fluid 68
Windscreen wipers and washers
Refilling the windscreen washer fluid 68
Winter tyres 173
Wiper service position 68
Wipers and washers 67
Automatic wiping 67
Convenient rear wiper function 67
Folding the wiper arms away 68
Low washer fluid 68
Replacing a wiper blade 69
Wireless phone charging 190

X

XDS+ 133